2008 Cadillac SRX Owner Manual

Seats and Restraint Systems 1-1
- Front Seats 1-2
- Rear Seats 1-11
- Safety Belts 1-13
- Child Restraints 1-32
- Airbag System 1-55
- Restraint System Check 1-72

Features and Controls 2-1
- Keys 2-3
- Doors and Locks 2-10
- Windows 2-16
- Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-20
- Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-24
- Mirrors 2-41
- Object Detection Systems 2-45
- OnStar® System 2-47
- Universal Home Remote System 2-50
- Storage Areas 2-57
- Sunroof 2-59

Instrument Panel 3-1
- Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Climate Controls 3-23
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-31
- Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-47
- Audio System(s) 3-70

Driving Your Vehicle 4-1
- Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle 4-2
- Towing 4-39

Service and Appearance Care 5-1
- Service 5-3
- Fuel 5-5
- Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
- All-Wheel Drive 5-44
- Rear Axle 5-46
- Front Axle 5-46
- Headlamp Aiming 5-47
- Bulb Replacement 5-47
- Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-49
- Tires 5-51
- Appearance Care 5-91
- Vehicle Identification 5-99
- Electrical System 5-100
- Capacities and Specifications 5-111

Maintenance Schedule 6-1
- Maintenance Schedule 6-2

Customer Assistance Information 7-1
- Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
- Reporting Safety Defects 7-16
- Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-18

Index 1

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Crest and Wreath, and the name SRX are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes to the product after that time without notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Cadillac Motor Car Division whenever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may be available in this model, but your vehicle may not have all of them. For example, more than one entertainment system may be offered or your vehicle may have been ordered without a front passenger or rear seats.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer/retailer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
www.helminc.com

Propriétaires Canadiens

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès de concessionnaire ou à l’adresse suivante:

Helm Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
www.helminc.com

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 15861906 A First Printing

©2007 General Motors Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using this Manual

Many people read the owner manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle to learn about the vehicle's features and controls. Pictures and words work together to explain things.

Index

A good place to quickly locate information about the vehicle is the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

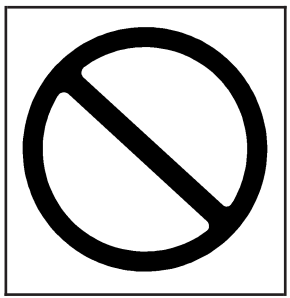
Safety Warnings and Symbols

There are a number of safety cautions in this book. A box with the word CAUTION is used to tell about things that could hurt you or others if you were to ignore the warning.

⚠ CAUTION:

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

We tell you what the hazard is and what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you do not, you or others could be hurt.



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means "Do Not," "Do Not do this" or "Do Not let this happen."

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Damage Warnings

You will also find notices in this manual.

Notice: **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty, and it could be costly. The notice tells what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle which use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems

Front Seats 1-2
- Manual Seats 1-2
- Power Seats 1-3
- Power Lumbar 1-4
- Heated Seats 1-4
- Memory Seat and Mirrors 1-5
- Reclining Seatbacks 1-6
- Head Restraints 1-9

Rear Seats 1-11
- Rear Seat Operation 1-11
- Stowable Seat 1-12

Safety Belts 1-13
- Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone 1-13
- How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-18
- Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-26
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-31
- Safety Belt Extender 1-32

Child Restraints 1-32
- Older Children 1-32
- Infants and Young Children 1-35
- Child Restraint Systems 1-39
- Where to Put the Restraint 1-41
- Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) 1-43
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-49
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-52

Airbag System 1-55
- Where Are the Airbags? 1-58
- When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-61
- What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-63
- How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-63
- What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-64
- Passenger Sensing System 1-65
- Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
- Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70

Restraint System Check 1-72
- Checking the Restraint Systems 1-72
- Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 1-73

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

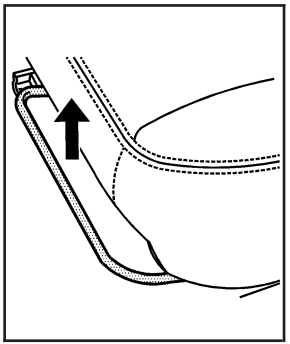
Front Seats

Manual Seats

⚠ CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

To move a manual seat forward or rearward:

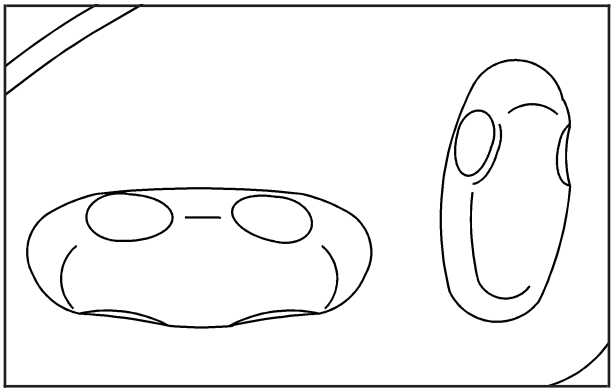


1. Lift the bar to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.

Try to move the seat with your body to be sure the seat is locked in place.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Seats



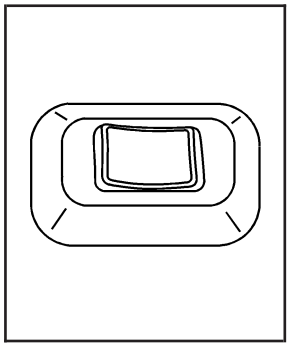
If the vehicle has power seats, the controls used to operate them are located on the outboard side of the seats.

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the horizontal control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire horizontal control up or down.

The vertical control is used for reclining your seatback. See “Power Reclining Seatbacks” under *Reclining Seatbacks on page 1-6* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Lumbar



Your vehicle may have this feature. The driver's and passenger's seatback lumbar support can be adjusted by moving the control located on the outboard side of the seat cushions.

To increase or decrease support, hold the control forward or rearward. Keep in mind that as your seating position changes, as it may during long trips, so should the position of your lumbar support. Adjust the seat as needed.

Heated Seats

Vehicles with heated front seats have controls located on the driver's and passenger's doors, near the door handle.

(Heated Seatback): Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings and to turn the heat to the seatback off. Indicator lights next to the button show the heat level selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

(Heated Seat and Seatback): Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings and to turn the heat to the seat off. Indicator lights next to the button show the heat level selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

You will need to press the appropriate heated seat or seatback button every time you start the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Memory Seat and Mirrors

On vehicles with the memory feature the buttons are located on the driver's door.

1: Saves the seating position for driver 1.

2: Saves the seating position for driver 2.

: Recalls the easy exit position.

To program the buttons:

1. Adjust the driver's seat including the seatback recliner, both outside mirrors, and the throttle and brake pedals. See *Outside Power Heated Mirrors on page 2-43* and *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 2-28* for more information.
2. Press and hold button 1 for at least three seconds.

   Two beeps confirm that the settings have been saved.
3. Repeat the procedure for a second driver using button 2.

The vehicle must be in PARK (P) to recall the stored settings.

Press either button to recall the stored setting. Each time a memory button is pressed, a single beep will sound.

To recall the stored positions when unlocking your vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, see *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62*.

To stop recall movement of the memory feature, press one of the power seat or mirror controls.

Easy Exit Seat

Press the exit button to recall the exit position when the vehicle is in PARK (P). You will hear a beep.

The memory seat and easy exit features can also be programmed using the Driver Information Center (DIC).

See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reclining Seatbacks

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ CAUTION:

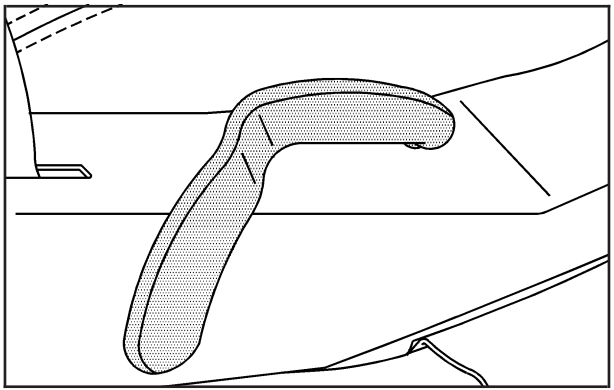
You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

If your front passenger's seat has a manual reclining seatback, the lever used to operate it is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



To recline the seatback:

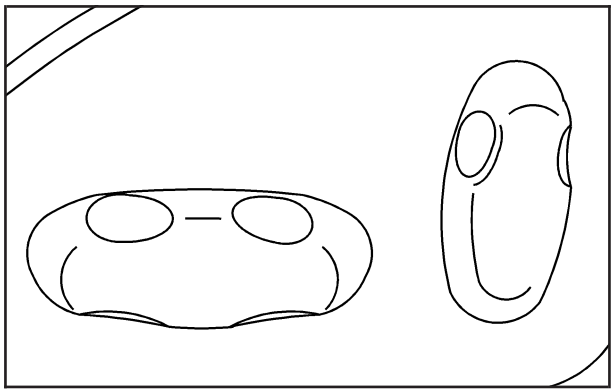
1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

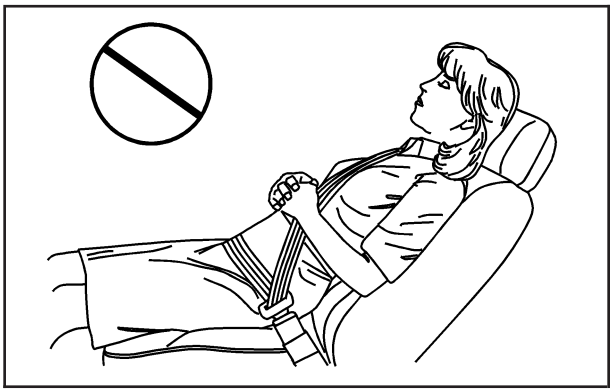
To return the seatback to an upright position, do the following:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Reclining Seatbacks





If your seats have power reclining seatbacks, use the vertical power seat control located on the outboard side of each seat.

- To recline the seatback, press the control toward the rear of the vehicle.
- To raise the seatback, press the control toward the front of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

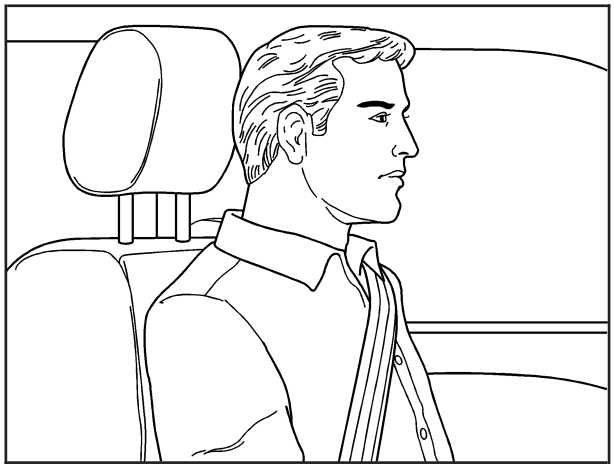
The shoulder belt cannot do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

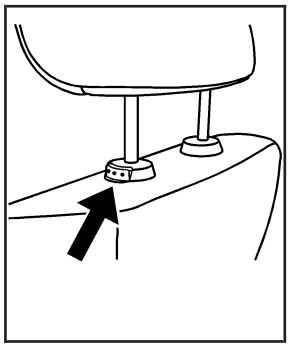
Do not have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

Head Restraints



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

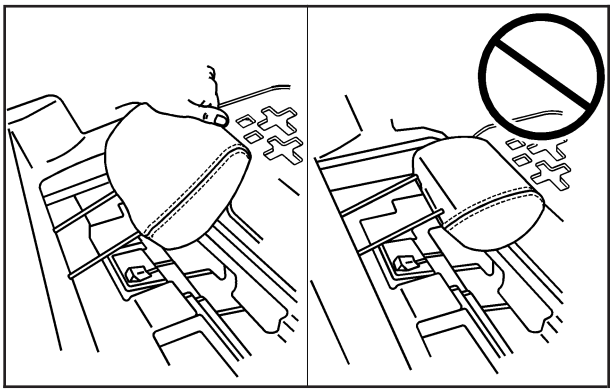
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Pull the restraint up to raise it. To lower it, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the head restraint down.

The front seat head restraints can also tilt forward and rearward. The second row seat head rests do not tilt.

Pull up or push down to adjust the second and third row seat head rests, if the vehicle has them.



The third row seat head rests can be removed from the seatback. To do this, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and pull them out from the seatback. Store the head rest, front side facing up, in the compartment behind the third row, by inserting the head rest posts into the slots in the storage area.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Operation

Adjusting the Second Row Seat

The second row seat can be adjusted forward or rearward. Pull up on the lever under the seat cushion and slide the seat. Release the lever and try to move the seat forward and rearward to be sure it is locked into place.

Entering or Exiting the Third Row Seat

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the third row seating position while the second row is folded, or folded and tumbled, could cause injury in a sudden stop or crash. Be sure to return the seat to the passenger seating position. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place.

The passenger's side of the second row seat has an easy entry feature, making it easy to get in and out of the third row seat, if your vehicle has one.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**

To operate the seat, pull the release handle located on the top of the seatback. Fold the seatback forward, then pull the release handle on the top of the seatback to release the seat to tumble forward.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Stowable Seat

If your vehicle has a third row seat, it is a power folding seat.

The head rests must be removed before folding the third row seat, see *Head Restraints on page 1-9*.

The buttons to operate the power folding third row seat are inside the liftgate and behind the second row seat on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

: Press to tilt the seatback forward or rearward.

: Press to fold the seat.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**

Before folding or unfolding the third row seat, all of the following conditions must be met:

- The liftgate or passenger's side rear door must be open.
- The unlock button on either the remote keyless entry transmitter or the door must be pressed three times to enable the rear seat for two minutes, or the ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.
- The vehicle must be in PARK (P).
- The vehicle cannot have a low battery.

After the seat is folded, fold the panel on the seat forward flat on the floor.

If the seat's path is blocked it will stop and back away. Press the button again to return the seat to its previous position.

Before returning the third row seat to the passenger seating position, the panel must be folded back upon itself. Press and hold one of the power folding seat buttons and the seat will unfold into the seating position. If the seat is not unfolded fully into the seating position, a chime will sound when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P). This indicates that the seat is not ready for a passenger.

Replace the head rests.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belts

Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not let anyone ride where he or she cannot wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from it and be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Your vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle your safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-33*.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

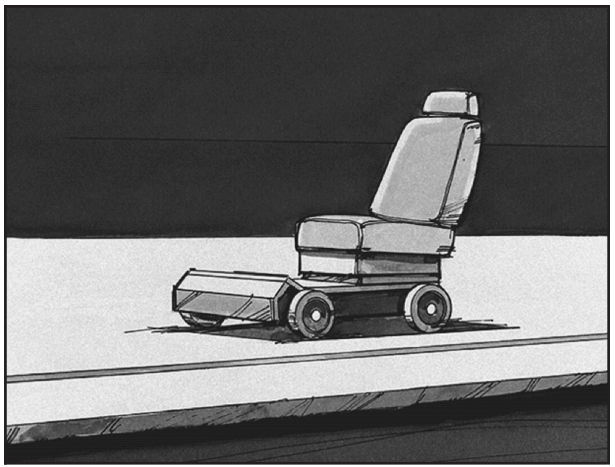
A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

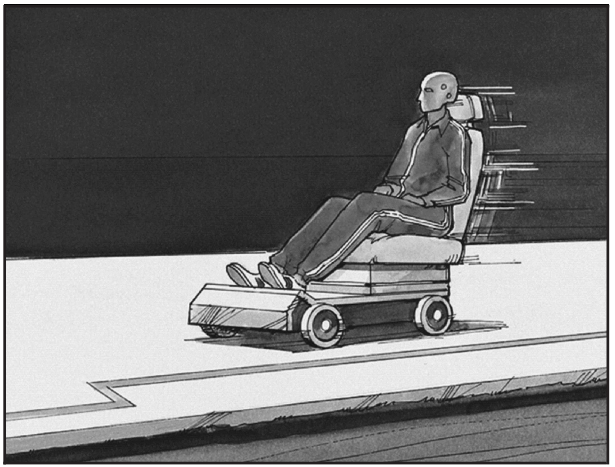
After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

Why Safety Belts Work

When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.

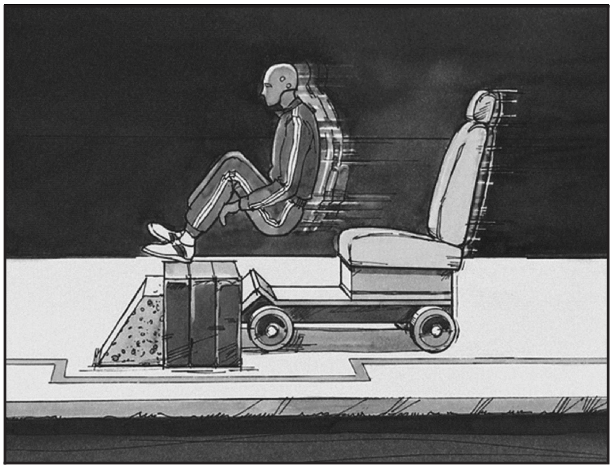


Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.



Put someone on it.

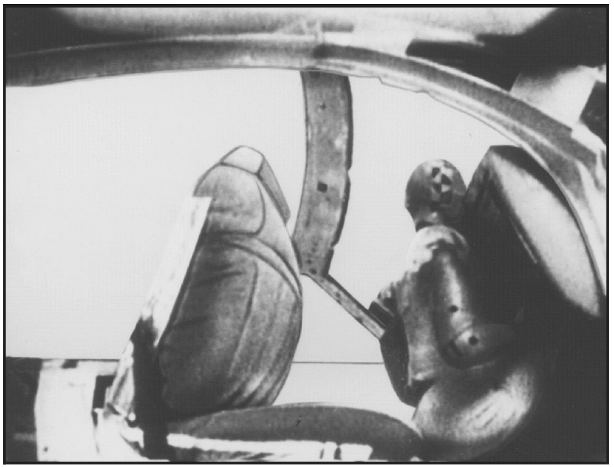
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



or the instrument panel...

or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

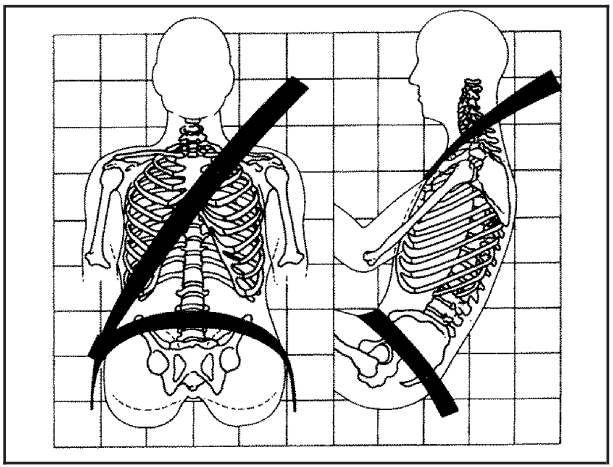
This section is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-32* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-35*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.

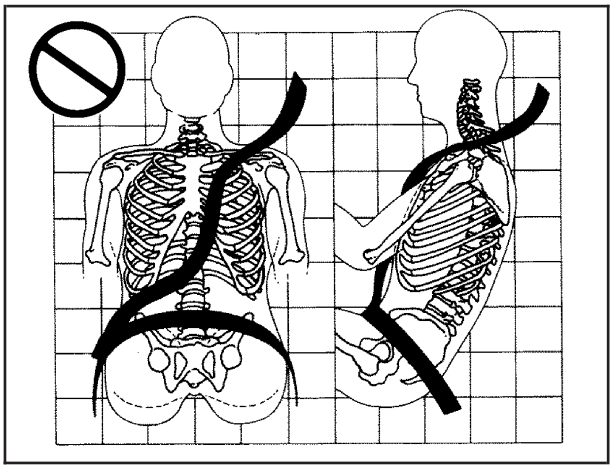


Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What is wrong with this?**



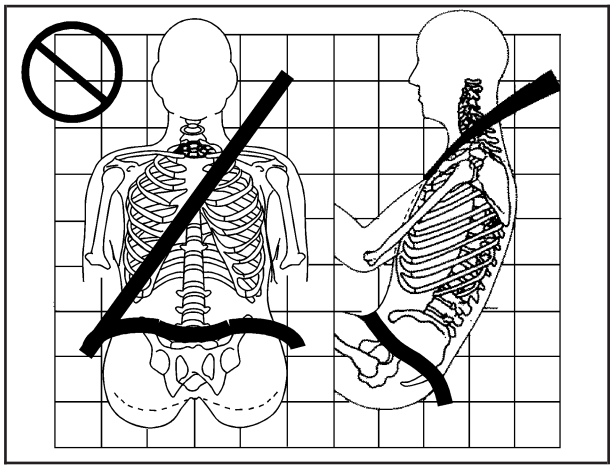
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What is wrong with this?**



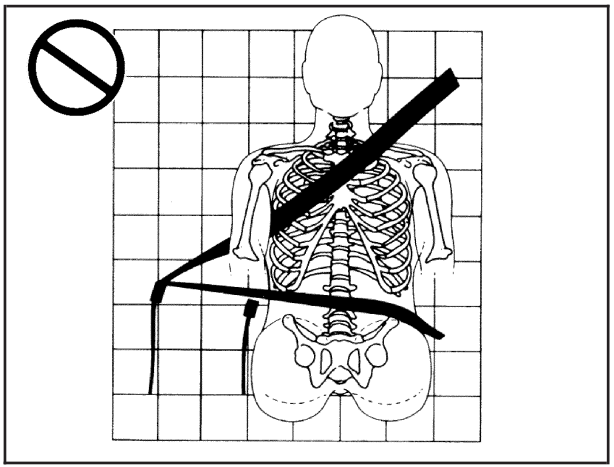
A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What is wrong with this?**



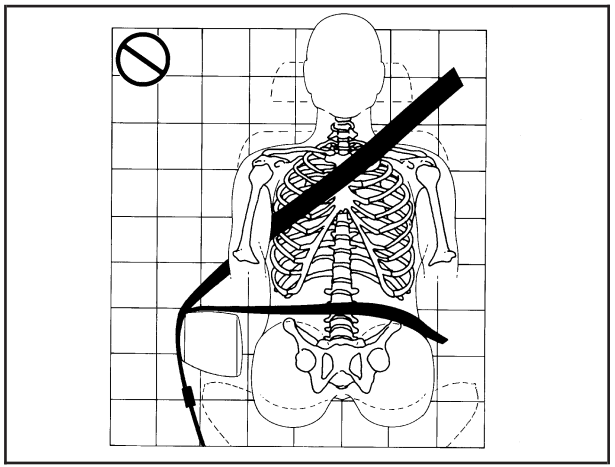
A: The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What is wrong with this?**



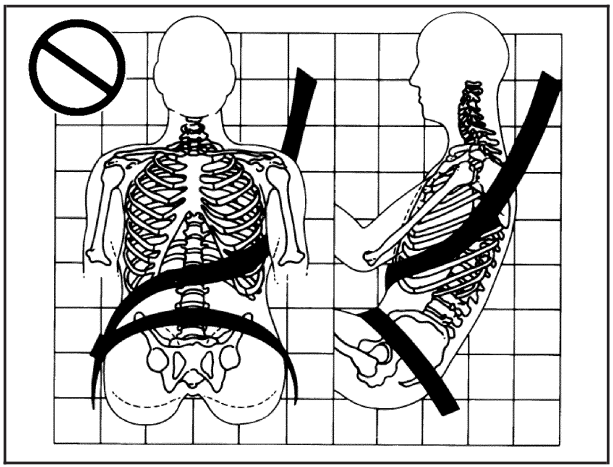
A: The belt is over an armrest.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries.
Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?



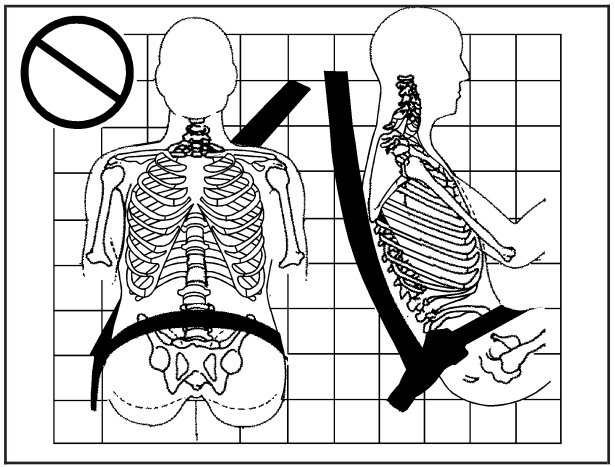
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What is wrong with this?**



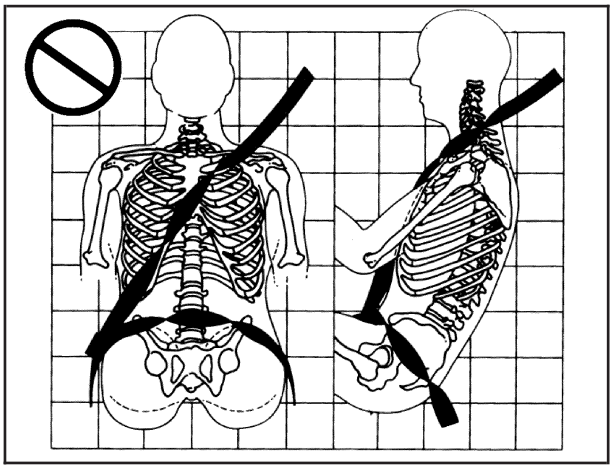
A: The belt is behind the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What is wrong with this?**



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer/retailer to fix it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

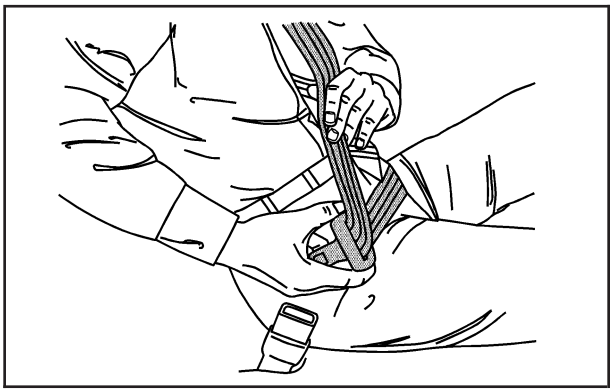
Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in your vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

Here is how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

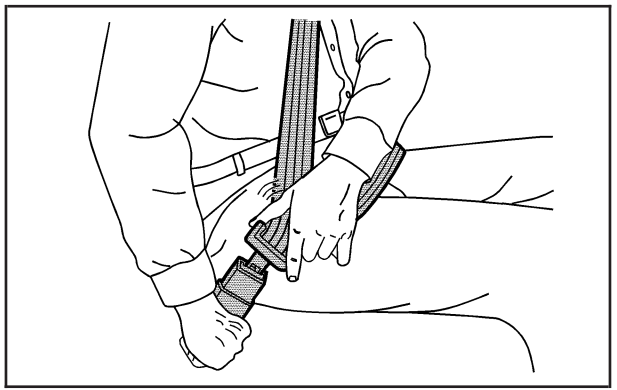
1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

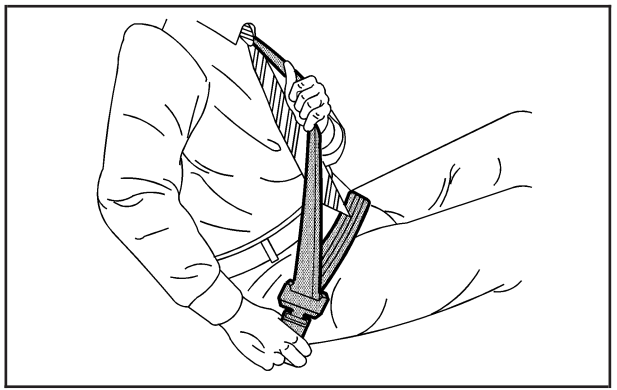
   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.



3. If the belt stops before it reaches the buckle, tilt the latch plate and keep pulling until you can buckle the belt.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS





4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

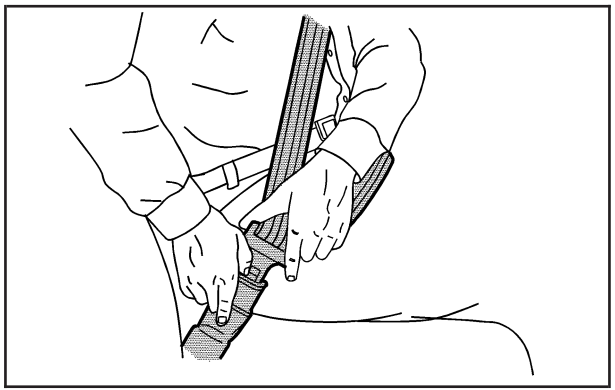
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-32*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way.

Before you close a door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

Your vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although you cannot see them, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, if your vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If they activate in a crash, you will need to get new ones, and probably other new parts for your safety belt system. See *Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash on page 1-73*.

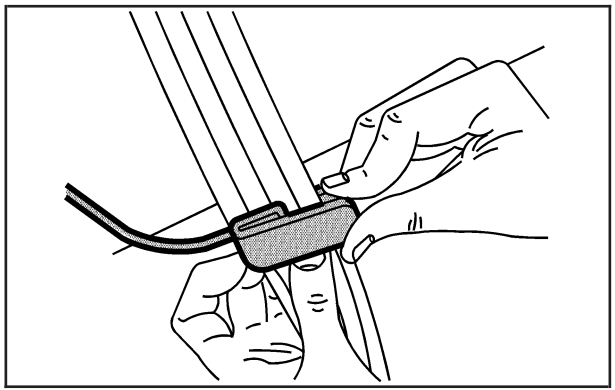
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

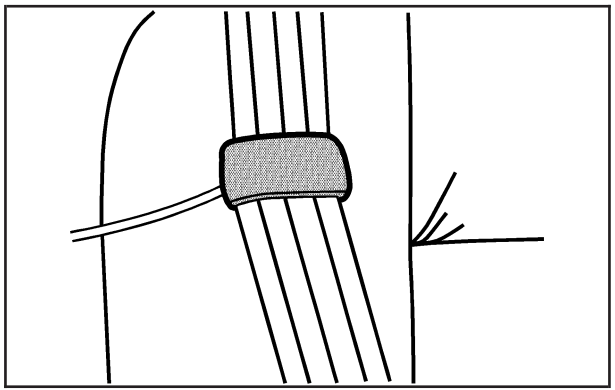
There is one guide available for each of the rear outside passenger positions in the second row. Here is how to install the comfort guide to the shoulder belt.

1. Slide the guide off of its storage clip located on the seatback.



2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

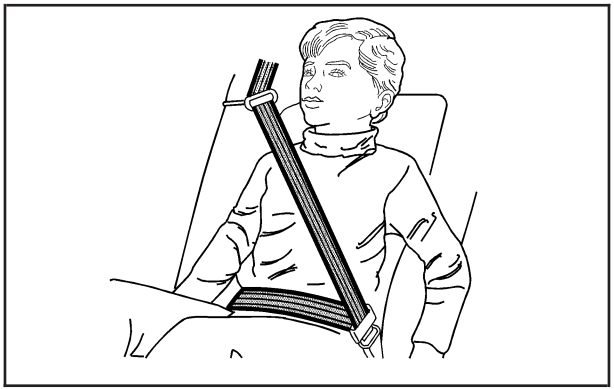


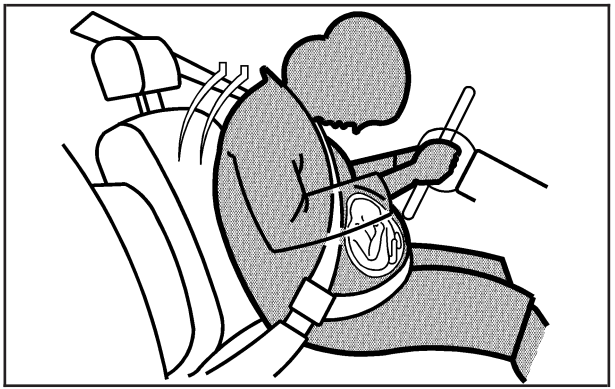
3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS





4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guide. Slide the guide back on its storage clip located on the seatback.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

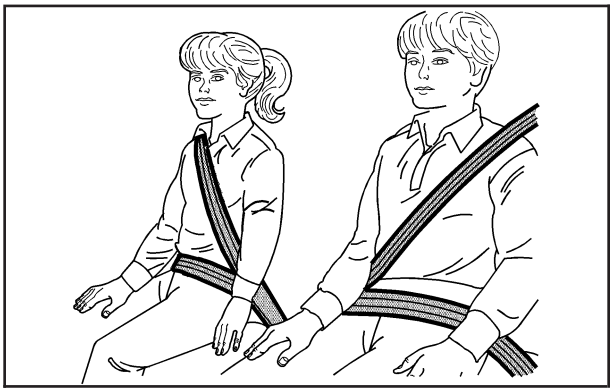
Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer/retailer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat, state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-26* for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-26*.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

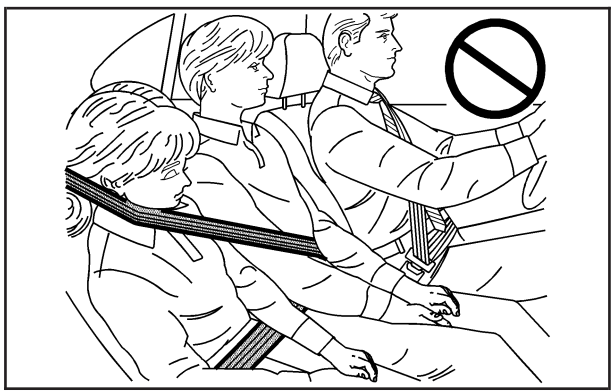
In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.



⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child might slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The child could also move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

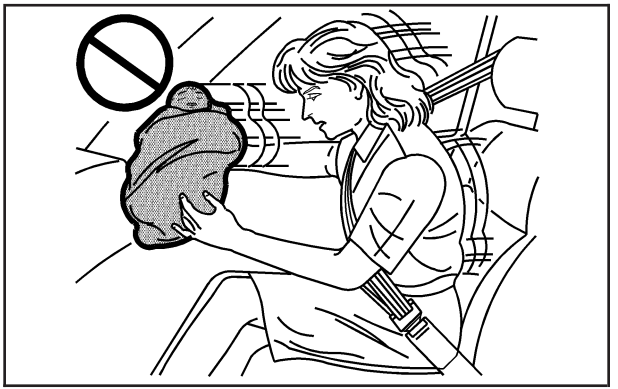
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. In addition, young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone; they need to use a child restraint.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

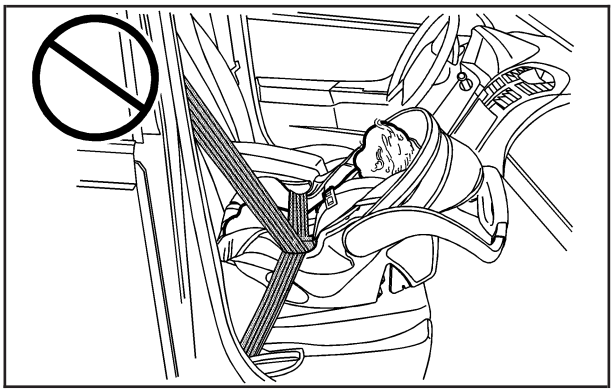
People should never hold a baby in their arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby does not weigh much — until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. A baby should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ CAUTION:

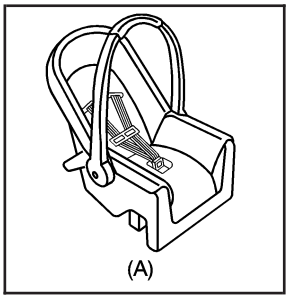
Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in appropriate infant restraints.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

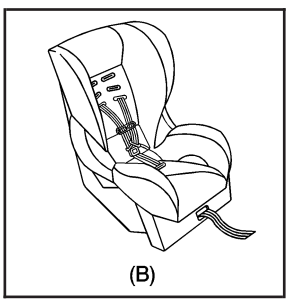
The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems


(A)

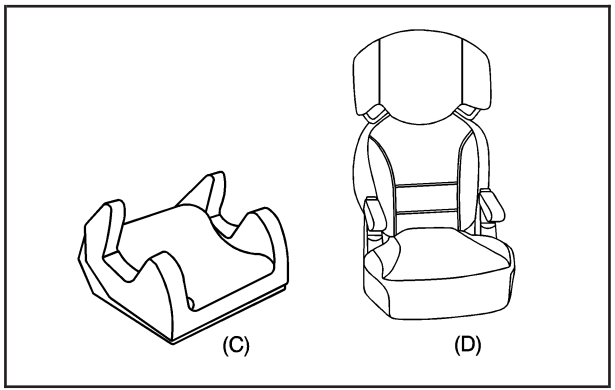
A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.


(B)

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



A booster seat (C-D) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Because there are different systems, it is important to refer to the instructions that come with the restraint. Make sure the child is properly secured, following the instructions that came with that restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger’s frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for additional information.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Wherever you install a child restraint, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

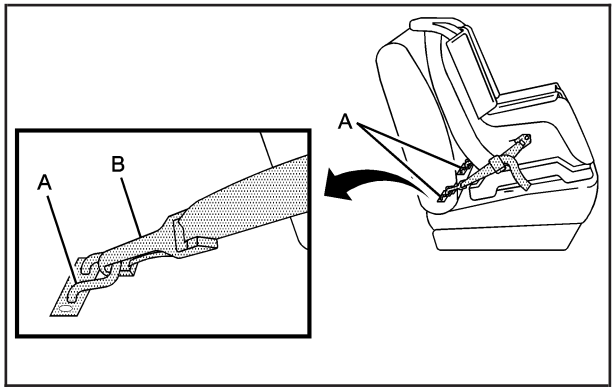
The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

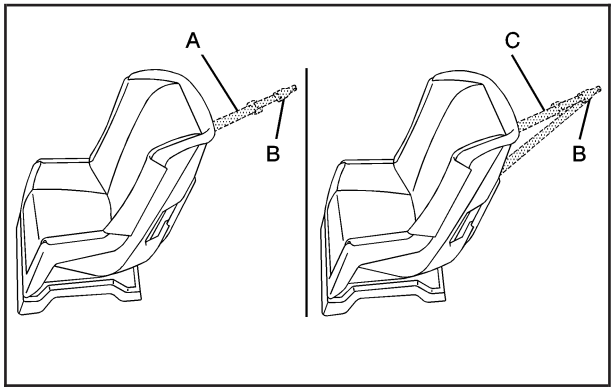
Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Top Tether Anchor



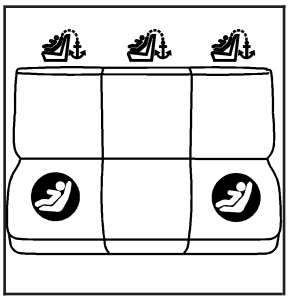
A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



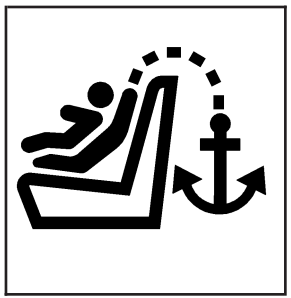
Second Row

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

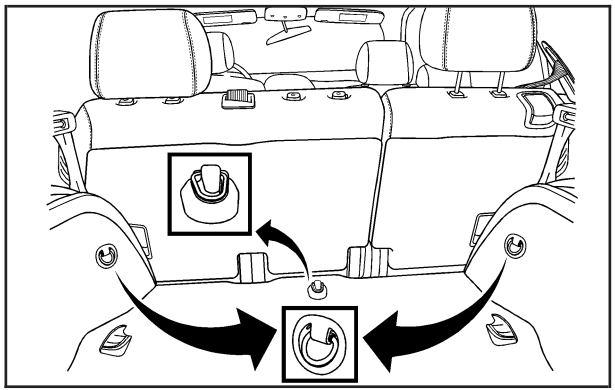
(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Each outboard seating position in the second row has exposed metal lower anchors in the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



To assist you in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is located near the top tether anchors.



There are two top tether anchors located on the side of the wheel well in the rear cargo area. There is another top tether anchor in the center of the rear cargo area. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-41* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

⚠ CAUTION:

Each top tether anchor and lower anchor in the vehicle is designed to hold only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured if this happens. To help prevent injury to people and damage to your vehicle, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Secure any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed. Be sure to follow the instructions of the child restraint manufacturer.

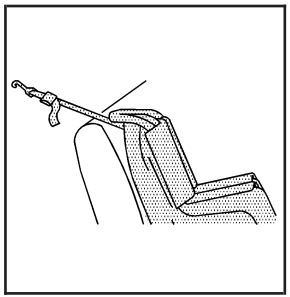
Notice: **Contact between the child restraint LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly may cause damage to these parts. Make sure when securing unused safety belts behind the child restraint that there is no contact between the child restraint LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly.**

Folding an empty rear seat with the safety belts secured may cause damage to the safety belt or the seat. When removing the child restraint, always remember to return the safety belts to their normal, stowed position before folding the rear seat.

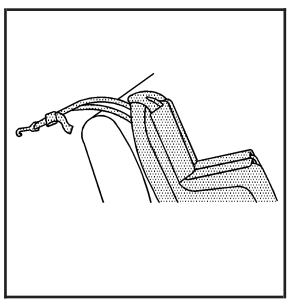
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   - 1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   - 1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   - 1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   - 2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   - 2.2. If you have an adjustable headrest or head restraint, raise the headrest or head restraint.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

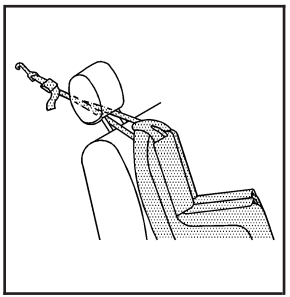
2.3. Route, attach and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



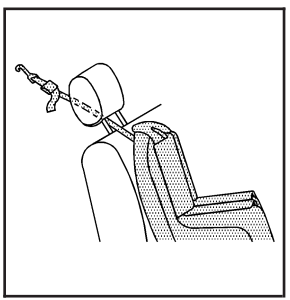
If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for how to install your child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

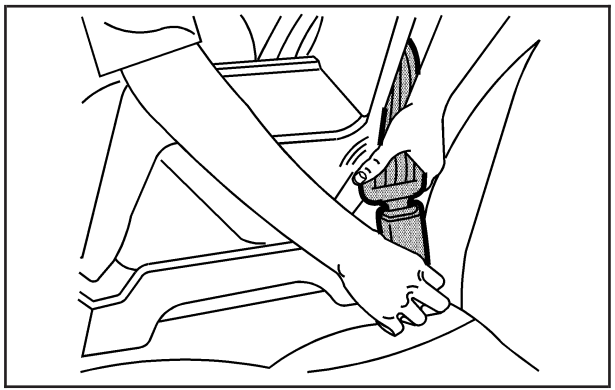
In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

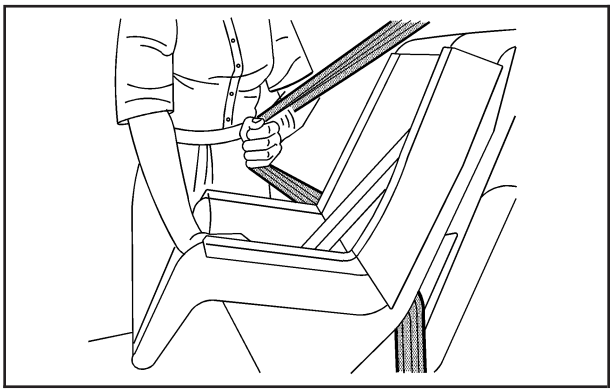
If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If you need to install more than one child restraint in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-41*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



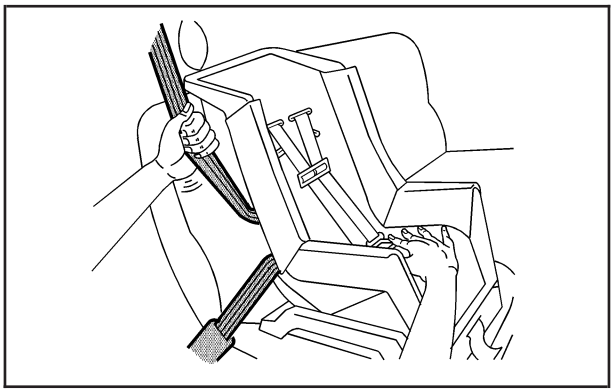


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. If your child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for more information.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

Your vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-41*.

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35* for more information on this, including important safety information.

A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for additional information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for how to install your child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

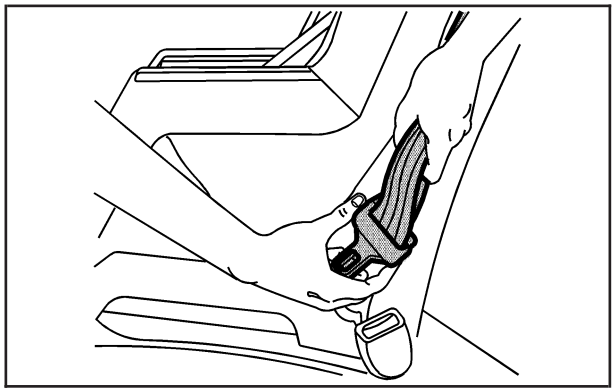
In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

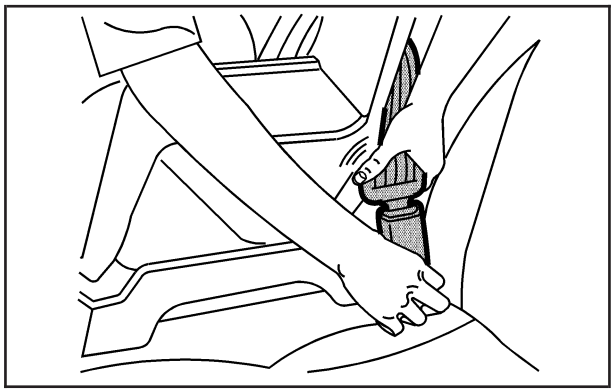
   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35*.

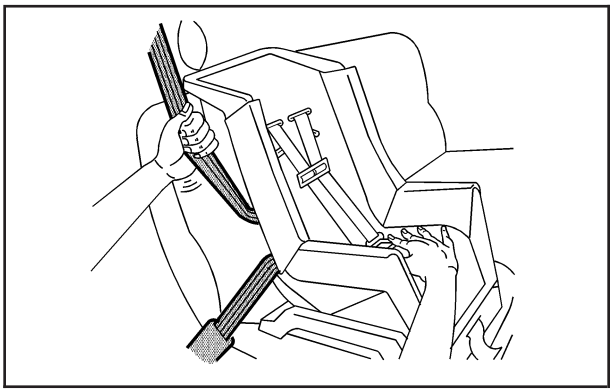
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS





4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

If the airbag is off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

Remove any additional material from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters or seat massagers before reinstalling or securing the child restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer/retailer.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way.

Airbag System

Your vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the right front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the right front passenger.

All of the airbags in your vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the safety belts. All airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them.

⚠ CAUTION:

Frontal airbags are designed to deploy in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They are not designed to inflate in rollover, rear crashes, or in many side crashes.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They are not designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover, or in rear crashes. Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle, during a vehicle rollover, or in a severe frontal impact. They are not designed to inflate in rear crashes.

Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

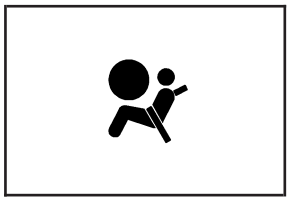
Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ CAUTION:

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 1-32* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-35*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

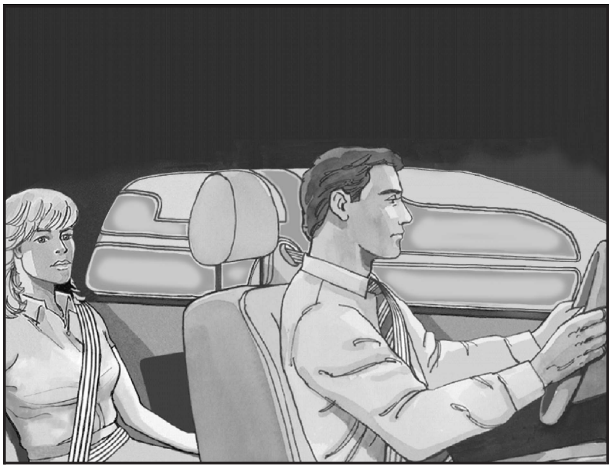
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The right front passenger's frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and right front passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ CAUTION:

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

If your vehicle has roof-rail airbags, never secure anything to the roof of your vehicle by routing the rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In addition, your vehicle has a dual-stage driver airbag. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

Your vehicle also has a dual-depth passenger airbag that adjusts the restraint according to crash severity and seat location using electronic frontal sensor(s) and other special sensors which enable the sensing system to monitor the position of the front passenger seat. The passenger airbag inflates to a reduced depth when the passenger seat is in a forward position. For more rearward front seating positions, the passenger airbag may inflate to an increased depth (a full deployment), based on the crash severity measured early in the event. (Always wear your safety belt, even with frontal airbags.)

Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not intended to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck. Both roof-rail airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact. In a rollover event, roof-rail airbag deployment is determined by the direction of the roll.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbag modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-61* for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

Your vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, and turn the hazard warning flashers on when the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

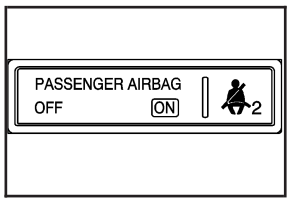
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

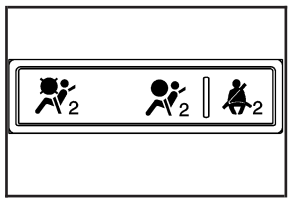
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 7-18* and *Event Data Recorders on page 7-19*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

Your vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger's position. The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the instrument panel when you start your vehicle.



United States



Canada

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or the symbol for off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver's airbags are not part of the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger's seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a child restraint.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- The right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35*.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's directions and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-52*.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 1-9*.

Remove any additional material from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers before reinstalling or securing the child restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle, and check with your dealer/retailer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the right front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger's seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger's seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, turn the vehicle off, remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters or seat massagers and ask the person to place the seatback in the fully upright position, then sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and then enable the right front passenger's frontal airbag.

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See "Safety Belts" and "Child Restraints" in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the airbag(s). See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more on this, including important safety information.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment other than any that GM has approved for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

⚠ CAUTION:

Stowing of articles under the passenger's seat or between the passenger's seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around your vehicle. Your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, front sensors, side impact sensors, rollover sensor module, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger's position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger's seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65*.

If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

If your vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels on page 5-70* for additional important information.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

In addition, your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Restraint System Check

Checking the Restraint Systems

Safety Belts

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly.

Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-33* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 5-94*.

Airbags

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*. See your dealer/retailer for service.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

⚠ CAUTION:

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If you have had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system (if equipped) parts?

After a very minor crash, nothing may be necessary. But the belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer/retailer to have your safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

If your vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system (if equipped), was not being used at the time of the crash.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

Have your safety belt pretensioners checked if your vehicle has been in a crash, if your airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTES

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 2 Features and Controls

Keys 2-3
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-5
- Remote Vehicle Start 2-7

Doors and Locks 2-10
- Door Locks 2-10
- Central Door Unlocking System 2-10
- Power Door Locks 2-10
- Delayed Locking 2-11
- Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
- Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
- Lockout Protection 2-12
- Power Liftgate 2-13

Windows 2-16
- Power Windows 2-17
- Sun Visors 2-20

Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-20
- Theft-Deterrent System 2-20
- PASS-Key® III+ 2-22
- PASS-Key® III+ Operation 2-22

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-24
- New Vehicle Break-In 2-24
- Ignition Positions 2-25
- Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-26
- Starting the Engine 2-26
- Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 2-28
- Engine Coolant Heater 2-28
- Automatic Transmission Operation 2-30
- Tow/Haul Mode 2-33
- Parking Brake 2-34
- Shifting Into PARK (P) 2-36
- Shifting Out of PARK (P) 2-38
- Parking Over Things That Burn 2-38
- Engine Exhaust 2-39
- Running the Engine While Parked 2-40

Mirrors 2-41
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar® 2-41
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar® and Compass 2-41
- Outside Power Heated Mirrors 2-43
- Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror 2-44
- Park Tilt Mirrors 2-44
- Outside Convex Mirror 2-44

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 2 Features and Controls

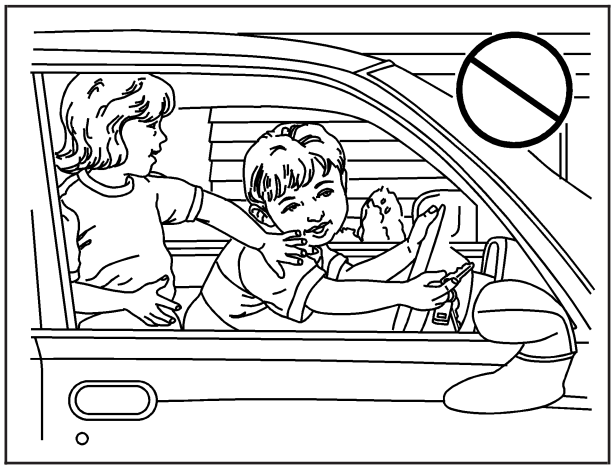
Object Detection Systems 2-45
Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) 2-45
OnStar® System 2-47
Universal Home Remote System 2-50
Universal Home Remote System 2-50
Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED) 2-50
Storage Areas 2-57
Glove Box 2-57
Cupholder(s) 2-57
Center Console Storage 2-57
Luggage Carrier 2-58
Cargo Cover 2-59
Cargo Management System 2-59
Sunroof 2-59
Sunroof (Ultra View) 2-59
Sunroof (Ultra View Plus) 2-61

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



The key can be used for the ignition and door locks.

If you ever lose your keys, your dealer/retailer will be able to assist you with obtaining replacements.

Notice: **If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If you are locked out of your vehicle, contact Roadside Service. See *Roadside Service on page 7-8* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

At times you may notice a decrease in operating range. This is normal for any RKE system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement is necessary. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If you are still having trouble, see your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician for service.

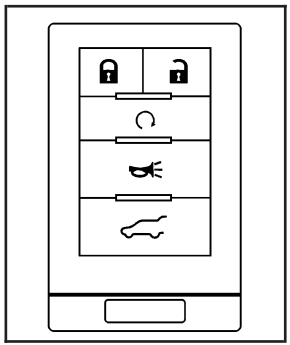
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions, including lock, unlock, power liftgate, vehicle locator/ panic alarm and remote vehicle start, if your vehicle has this feature, will work up to 195 feet (60 m) away.

If your vehicle has the remote vehicle start feature, you will be able start your vehicle with the RKE transmitter. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running and you may need to be closer to your vehicle to turn it off than you were to turn it on.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4*.



With Remote Start (Without Remote Start Similar)

(Lock): Press this symbol on the RKE transmitter to lock the doors. This also arms the theft-deterrent system. See *Theft-Deterrent System on page 2-20* for additional information.

You can program your vehicle so that the exterior lamps will flash and/or the horn will sound when you lock the doors with the RKE transmitter. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62* for more information on programming this feature.

(Unlock): Press this symbol on the RKE transmitter to unlock the driver's door. This also disarms the theft-deterrent system. Press the button again, within five seconds, to unlock the rest of the doors.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can program your vehicle so that the exterior lamps will flash when you unlock the doors with the RKE transmitter. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62* for more information on programming this feature.

If your vehicle is programmed for remote confirmation, the doors must be closed for this feature to work. If a door is open, remote confirmation will be canceled.

(Remote Vehicle Start): Your vehicle may be started from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7.*

(Panic Alarm): Press and release this button to locate your vehicle. The turn signal lamps will flash and the horn will sound three times. Press and hold this button for more than two seconds to activate the panic alarm. The turn signal lamps will flash and the horn will sound repeatedly for 30 seconds. The alarm will turn off when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN or the alarm button is pressed again. The ignition must be in LOCK/OFF for the panic alarm to work.

(Power Liftgate): Press and hold this button on the RKE transmitter to open and close the liftgate. The taillamps will flash and a chime will sound to indicate when the liftgate is opening and closing.

Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each RKE transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer/retailer. Remember to bring any additional transmitters with you so that all of them can be re-coded to match the new transmitter. Once your dealer/retailer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have a maximum of eight transmitters matched to it. See RELEARN REMOTE KEY under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*

Battery Replacement

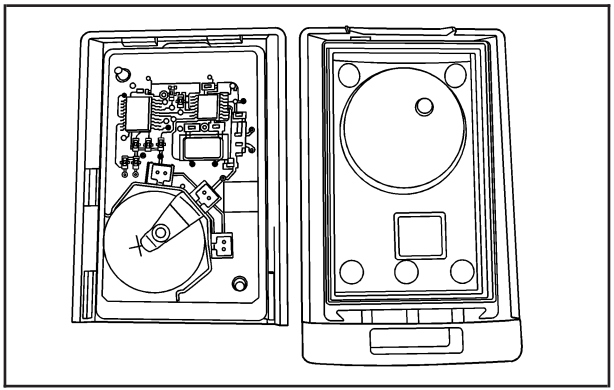
Under normal use, the battery in your RKE transmitter should last about four years.

The battery is weak if the transmitter will not work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it is probably time to change the battery.

The REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message in the vehicle's DIC will display if the RKE transmitter battery is low. See "REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.**



To replace the battery:

1. Insert a flat object with a thin edge into the notch, located above the metal base, and separate the bottom half from the top half of the transmitter.
2. Remove the old battery, but do not use a metal object to do this.
3. Slide the new battery into the transmitter with the positive side of the battery facing up. Use a type CR2032 battery, or equivalent type.
4. Snap the front and the back of the transmitter together. Make sure the cover is on tightly, so water will not get in.
5. Test the operation of the transmitter with the vehicle.

Remote Vehicle Start

The remote vehicle starting feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle. It also starts up the vehicle's automatic climate control system. When the remote start system is active, the climate control system will heat and cool the inside of the vehicle according to the previous settings of the system before turning the vehicle off. The rear window defogger will be turned on by the climate control system when it is cold outside. If the vehicle has heated seats, they will also turn on. See *Heated Seats on page 1-4* for additional information. Normal operation of the climate control system will return after the key is turned to ON/RUN. See *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-23*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view when doing so. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

Do not use the remote start feature if your vehicle is low on fuel. Your vehicle may run out of fuel.

Your RKE transmitter, with the remote start button, provides an increased range of operation. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running. As a result, you may need to be closer to your vehicle to turn it off than you were to turn it on.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for additional information.

(Remote Start): This button will be on the RKE transmitter if you have remote start.

To start the vehicle using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release the transmitter's lock button, then immediately press and hold the transmitter's remote start button until the turn signal lights flash or if the vehicle's lights are not visible, press and hold the remote start button for at least four seconds. The vehicle's doors will lock. Pressing the remote start button again after the vehicle has started will turn off the vehicle.

   When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on while the vehicle is running.
3. If it is the first remote start since the vehicle has been driven, repeat these steps, while the engine is still running, to extend the engine running time by 10 minutes. Remote start can be extended one time.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, insert and turn the key to ON/RUN to drive the vehicle.

If the vehicle is left running it will automatically shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension has been done.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To manually shut off a remote start:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press the remote start button until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition switch on and then off.

The remote vehicle start feature provides two separate starts, each with 10 minutes of engine running, or it provides one start with 10 minutes of engine running that may be extended 10 more minutes. If you press and release the transmitter lock button and then press and hold the remote start button on the RKE transmitter again before the first 10 minutes of engine running time has expired, 10 minutes are added to the remaining minutes. For example, if the lock button and then the remote start buttons are pressed again after five minutes of the engine run time, 10 minutes are added and you now have 15 minutes of engine running. The added ten minutes are considered a second remote vehicle start.

Once two remote starts or a single start with a time extension have been used, the vehicle must be started with the ignition key before you can use the remote start feature again.

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition, the hood is not closed, or if there is an emission control system malfunction.

The engine will turn off during a remote vehicle start if the coolant temperature gets too high, or the oil pressure is too low.

Your vehicle was shipped from the factory with the remote vehicle start system enabled. The system may be disabled through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See “REMOTE START” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62* for additional information.

See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-39* for important safety information when using remote start in a closed garage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- **Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors are not locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.**
- **Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.**
- **Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.**

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Because your vehicle has the theft-deterrent system, you must unlock the doors from the outside with the key or Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to avoid setting off the alarm. If the windows are down and the doors are locked, do not reach in to manually unlock the vehicle because you will set off the alarm.

From the inside, use the manual lock levers located on the door panels near the windows.

Push down on the manual lock lever to lock the door. To unlock the door, pull up on the lever.

Central Door Unlocking System

Your vehicle has a central door unlocking feature. When unlocking the driver's door, you can unlock the other doors by holding the key in the turned position for a few seconds or by quickly turning the key twice in the lock cylinder.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock switches are located on the front doors.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the doors.

(Lock): Press to lock the doors.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Delayed Locking

With this feature, you can delay the actual locking of the doors.

When the power door lock switch or the lock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter is pressed when the key is not in the ignition and the driver's door is opened, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

When all the doors are closed, the doors will lock automatically after five seconds. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five second timer will reset itself once all the doors are closed again.

You can press the door lock switch or the lock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter again to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

You can turn this feature off using the Driver Information Center (DIC). When delayed locking is off, the doors will lock immediately when you press the power door lock switch or the lock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62* for more information.

Programmable Automatic Door Locks

Your vehicle is programmed so that when the doors are closed, the ignition is on and the shift lever is moved out of PARK (P), all the doors will lock. The front doors will remain unlocked from inside the vehicle. The doors will unlock every time you stop the vehicle and move the shift lever back into PARK (P).

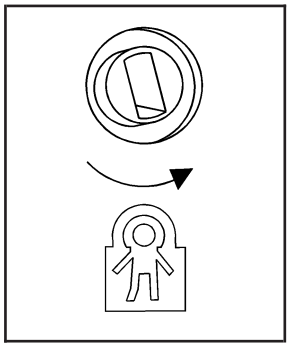
If someone needs to exit the vehicle once the doors are locked, have that person use the manual lever or power door lock switch for the rear doors. When the door is closed again, it will not lock automatically. Use the manual lever or the power door lock switch to lock the door.

The power door locks can be programmed through prompts displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC). These prompts allow you to choose various lock and unlock settings. For more information on programming, see *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Door Security Locks

Your vehicle has rear door security locks. These prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.



Lock Label shown

The rear door security locks are located on the inside edge of each rear door. The rear doors must be open to access them. The label showing lock and unlock positions is located near the lock.

To set the locks, do the following:

1. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the horizontal position.
2. Close the door.

When you want to open a rear door when the security lock is on, do the following:

1. Unlock the door using the remote keyless entry transmitter, if the vehicle has one, the power door lock switch, or by lifting the rear door manual lock.
2. Open the door from the outside.

To cancel the rear door security lock, do the following:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the vertical position.

Lockout Protection

If the power door lock switch is pressed when the key is in the ignition and a door is open, all the doors will lock and only the driver's door will unlock. If you close the doors, they can be locked by using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. Be sure to remove the key from the ignition when locking your vehicle.

This feature can be overridden by pressing the lock button on the RKE transmitter or by pressing the power lock switch a second time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Liftgate

Power Liftgate Operation

Your vehicle has a power liftgate. The vehicle must be in PARK (P) to power open or close the liftgate.

The liftgate must be completely closed to power open or completely opened to power close.

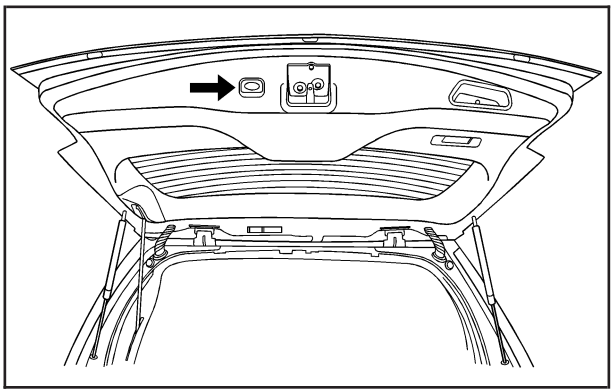
The taillamps will flash and a chime will sound at the beginning of each power operation cycle.

⚠ CAUTION:

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of the power liftgate. Make sure there is no one in the way of the liftgate as it is opening and closing.

Notice: **If you open the liftgate without checking for overhead obstructions such as a garage door, you could damage the liftgate or the liftgate glass. Always check to make sure the area above and behind the liftgate is clear before opening it.**

To open and close the liftgate, press and hold the power liftgate button on the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter (RKE) until the liftgate starts moving. Press the RKE button a second time to reverse that operation. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.



The liftgate can also be power closed by pressing the power liftgate button next to the liftgate latch. Press the button a second time during liftgate operation to reverse that operation. The power liftgate may be temporarily disabled under extreme temperatures or low battery condition. If this occurs, the liftgate can still be operated manually.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you shift the transmission out of PARK (P) while the power function is in progress, the liftgate power function will continue to completion. If you shift the transmission out of PARK (P) and accelerate before the power liftgate latches closed, the liftgate may reverse to the open position. Cargo could fall out of the vehicle. Always make sure the power liftgate is closed and latched before you drive away.

If you power open the liftgate and the liftgate support struts have lost pressure, the lights will flash and a chime will sound. The liftgate will hold open temporarily, then slowly close. See your dealer for service before using the liftgate.

Obstacle Detection Features

If the liftgate encounters an obstacle during a power open or close cycle, a warning chime will sound and the liftgate will automatically reverse direction to the fully closed or open position. After removing the obstruction, the liftgate may be power opened or closed normally.

If the liftgate encounters multiple obstacles on the same power cycle, the power function will deactivate, and the liftgate will switch to manual operation. The REAR ACCESS OPEN warning message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) will indicate that the liftgate is open. After removing the obstructions, manually open the liftgate to the fully open position or close the liftgate to the fully closed and latched position. The liftgate will now resume normal power operation.

Your vehicle has an obstacle detection sensor located on the rear edge of the rear quarter panel windows. If an object is caught between the liftgate and the window and presses against this sensor, the liftgate will reverse direction and open fully. The liftgate will remain open until it is activated again or closed manually.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Liftgate Operation

With the doors unlocked, the power liftgate can always be manually opened and closed.

To open the liftgate, pull up on the handle on the outside of the liftgate. To close the liftgate, use the pull cup to lower the liftgate and close. The liftgate latch will power cinch to closed position. Do not force the liftgate during a power cycle.

Always close the liftgate before driving.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to drive with the liftgate open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You can not see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. If you must drive with the liftgate open or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the liftgate:

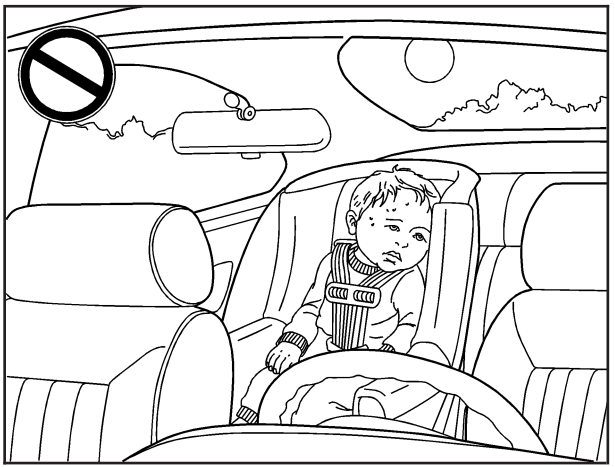
- **Make sure all other windows are shut.**
- **Turn the fan on your heating or cooling system to its highest speed and select the control setting that will force outside air into your vehicle. See *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-23*.**
- **If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-39*.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

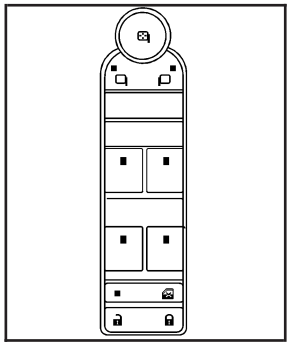
Power Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome from extreme heat in warm or hot weather and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.



The power window switches are located on the armrest near each window.

Press the switch to the first position to lower the window to the desired level. Pull the switch up to raise the window.

Your vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP) that allows you to use the power windows once the ignition has been turned off. For more information, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Express-Down Window

This feature is on all windows. Press the switch to the second position and release the switch to activate the express-down feature. To stop the window as it is lowering, press down or pull up briefly on the switch again.

Express-Up Window

This feature is on all windows. Pull the switch up to the second position and release the switch to activate the express-up feature. To stop the window as it is raising, pull up or press down briefly on the switch again.

Programming the Power Windows

If the battery on your vehicle has been recharged, disconnected, or is not working, you will need to reprogram each power window for the express-up feature to work. Before reprogramming, you will need to replace or recharge your vehicle's battery.

To program each window, follow these steps:

1. With the ignition in ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active, close all doors.
2. Press and hold the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue pulling the switch up for approximately two seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed. Repeat the process for the other windows.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when the express-up is active, the window will stop at the obstruction and auto-reverse to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will return to normal operation once the obstruction or condition is removed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

⚠ CAUTION:

If express override is activated, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before you use express override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Pull the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated.

In this mode, the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Window Lockout

(Window Lockout): The rear window lockout button is located on the driver's door armrest near the window switches.

Press the right side of the button to disable the rear window controls. The light on the button will illuminate, indicating the feature is in use. The rear windows still can be raised or lowered using the driver's window switches when the lockout feature is active.

To restore power to the rear windows, press the button again. The light on the button will go out.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Sun Visors

Swing down the primary visor to block out glare. It can also be detached from the center mount and moved to the side to block glare from that direction.

The driver's sunshade may also have buttons for a built-in garage door opener. See *Universal Home Remote System on page 2-50* for more information.

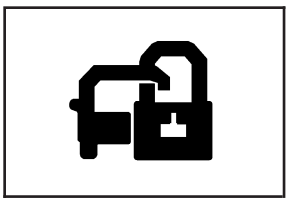
Lighted Visor Vanity Mirror

Pull the visor down and lift the cover. The light will automatically come on. The light will go out when you close the cover.

Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal.

Theft-Deterrent System



The security light is located on the instrument panel cluster.

If the ignition is off and a door is open, the security light will flash, reminding you to arm the theft-deterrent system.

To arm the system:

1. Lock the door using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the power door lock switch.
2. Close all the doors. The security light will illuminate. It should go off within approximately 30 seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a door or a liftgate is opened without a key or a RKE transmitter, the horn will sound and the lamps will flash for up to 30 seconds.

The theft-deterrent system will not arm if you lock the doors with a key, use the manual door lock or if the liftgate is ajar. It activates only if you use the RKE transmitter or the power door lock.

To avoid activating the alarm by accident:

- The vehicle should be locked with the door key or the manual door lock after the doors are closed if you don't want to arm the theft-deterrent system.
- Always unlock a door with a key or use the RKE transmitter. Pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter disarms the theft-deterrent system. Unlocking a door any other way while the system is armed will activate the alarm when a door or the liftgate is opened.

If you activate the alarm by accident, unlock the driver's door with your key. You can also turn off the alarm by using the unlock button on the RKE transmitter, or by starting the vehicle with a valid key.

Testing the Alarm

1. From inside the vehicle, roll down the window, then get out of the vehicle, keeping the door open.
2. From outside of the vehicle, with the door open, lock the vehicle using the power door lock switch or the RKE transmitter and close the door. Wait approximately 30 seconds until the security light goes off.
3. Reach in and unlock the door using the manual lock and open the door. The horn will sound and the exterior lamps will flash.

You can turn off the alarm by unlocking the driver's door with your key, using the unlock button on the RKE transmitter or by starting the car with a valid key.

If the alarm does not sound when it should, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-101*. If the fuse does not need to be replaced, you may need to have your vehicle serviced.

To reduce the possibility of theft, always arm the theft-deterrent system when leaving your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

PASS-Key® III+

The PASS-Key® III+ system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PASS-Key® III+ uses a radio frequency transponder in the key that matches a decoder in your vehicle.

PASS-Key® III+ Operation

Your vehicle has PASS-Key® III+ (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key® III+ is a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the key is turned to ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY or START from the LOCK/OFF position.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light will come on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When the PASS-Key® III+ system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it prevents the vehicle from starting. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine does not start and the security light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when trying to start the vehicle, there may be a problem with your theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-101*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, your vehicle needs service. If your vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer/retailer who can service the PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made. In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance.

It is possible for the PASS-Key® III+ decoder to learn the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to eight additional keys may be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have keys made and programmed to the system.

See your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to get a new key blank that is cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

To program the new additional key:

1. Verify that the new key has a ⊕ stamped on it.
2. Insert the original, already programmed, key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer/retailer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.
4. Insert the new key to be programmed and turn it to ON/RUN within five seconds of the original key being turned to LOCK/OFF.

   The security light will turn off once the key has been programmed.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you lose or damage your PASS-Key® III+ key, see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

New Vehicle Break-In

Notice: **Your vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines for the first 500 miles (805 km):**

- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow.**
- **Do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).**
- **Do not make full-throttle starts; also refrain from using the full throttle while driving. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**

If these procedures are not followed, the engine, axle, or other parts could be damaged.

Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this break-in guideline every time you get new linings.

Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.

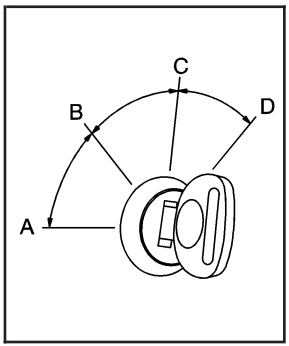
Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ignition Positions

With the key in the ignition switch, you can turn the key to four different positions.

To shift out of PARK (P), ignition must be in the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal must be applied.



Notice: **If your key seems stuck in LOCK/OFF and you can't turn it, be sure you are using the correct key; if so, is it all the way in? Turn the key only with your hand. Using a tool to force it could break the key or the ignition switch. If none of these works, then your vehicle needs service.**

A (LOCK/OFF): This is the only position in which you can insert or remove the key. This position locks the ignition, and transmission. It is a theft-deterrent feature.

B (ACC/ACCESSORY): This position allows you to use things like the radio and the windshield wipers when the engine is off. This position will allow you to turn off the engine.

C (ON/RUN): This position is for driving. When you turn off the engine, the transmission will lock. If you need to shift the transmission out of PARK (P), the ignition key has to be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off. You may not be able to start your vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

D (START): This position starts the engine.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Key In the Ignition

Never leave your vehicle with the keys inside, as it is an easy target for joy riders or thieves. If you leave the key in the ignition and park your vehicle, a chime will sound, when you open the driver's door. Always remember to remove your key from the ignition and take it with you. This will lock your ignition and transmission. Also, always remember to lock the doors.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ignition while your vehicle is parked. You may not be able to start your vehicle after it has been parked for an extended period of time.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows
- Sunroof

Power to the audio system will work up to 10 minutes or until the driver's door is opened. Power to the windows or sunroof will work up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened. For an additional 10 minutes of operation, close all the doors and turn the key to ON/RUN and then back to LOCK/OFF.

Starting the Engine

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine will not start in any other position – this is a safety feature. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   Your vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF position.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or –18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

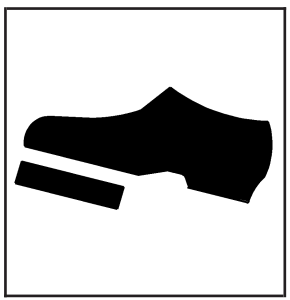
Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer/retailer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal

If your vehicle has this feature, you can change the position of the throttle and brake pedals. This feature is designed for shorter drivers, since the pedals cannot move farther away from the standard position, but can move closer for better pedal reach.

No adjustment to the pedals can be made when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R) or while using the cruise control.



The switch used to adjust the pedals is located on the instrument panel.

Before you start driving, fully press the brake pedal to confirm the adjustment is right for you. While driving, make only small adjustments.

Move the switch rearward to move the pedals closer to your body. Move the switch forward to move the pedals away from your body.

Engine Coolant Heater

The engine coolant heater, if available, can help in cold weather conditions at or below 0°F (–18°C) for easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Plug in the coolant heater at least four hours before starting your vehicle. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. For the 3.6L V6 engines, the cord is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle in front of the fuse block. For the 4.6L V8 engine, the cord is on the front center of the vehicle above the radiator.

   You must remove the plastic cap to access the plug.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

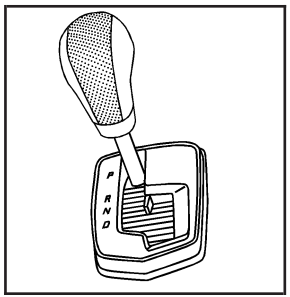
4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer/retailer in the area where you will be parking your vehicle. The dealer/retailer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transmission Operation

The shift lever is located on the center console between the front seats.



There are several different positions for the shift lever.

PARK (P): This position locks the rear wheels. It is the best position to use when you start the engine because your vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into PARK (P) on page 2-36*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in PARK (P) before starting the engine. Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply your regular brakes first and then press the shift lever button before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of PARK (P) on page 2-38*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.**

REVERSE (R): Use this gear to back up.

At low vehicle speeds, you can also use REVERSE (R) to rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging your transmission. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-32* for additional information.

NEUTRAL (N): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only. You can also use NEUTRAL (N) when your vehicle is being towed.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting your vehicle.**

DRIVE (D): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy for your vehicle. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down. The transmission will shift down to a lower gear and have more power.

  Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 4-10*.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

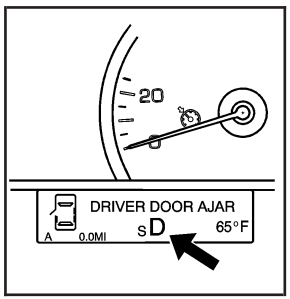
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle at high RPMs without upshifting while using Driver Shift Control (DSC), you could damage your vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using DSC.**

Your automatic transmission has a Driver Shift Control (DSC) feature that allows you to change gears similar to a manual transmission. To use the DSC feature:

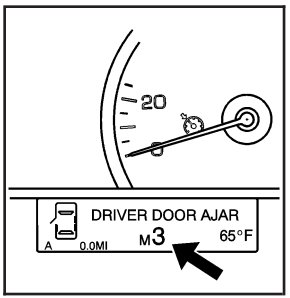
1. Slide the shift lever over from DRIVE (D) to the right into the DSC area.



When the transmission is in DSC mode the sport symbol in the Driver Information Center (DIC) will come on.

If you do not move the shift lever forward or rearward, the vehicle will be in sport mode. When you are in the sport mode the vehicle will still shift automatically. While driving in sport mode, the transmission may remain in a gear longer than it would in the normal driving mode based on braking, throttle input, and vehicle lateral acceleration.

2. To enter the DSC mode, press the shift lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.



The DIC will show the requested gear range when moving the shift lever forward or rearward. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47*.

While using the DSC feature, the vehicle will have firmer shifting and increased performance. You can use this for sport driving or when climbing or descending hills, to stay in gear longer, or to down shift for more power or engine braking.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

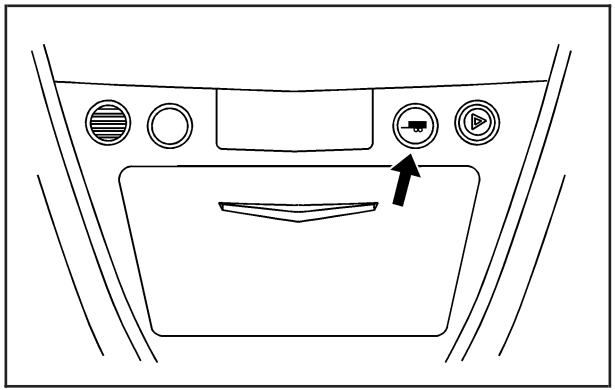
The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear if the engine RPM is too high.

If shifting is prevented for any reason, the currently selected gear will flash multiple times, indicating that the transmission has not shifted gears.

While in the DSC mode, the transmission will automatically downshift when the vehicle comes to a stop and while quickly applying the accelerator to increase speed. This will allow for more power during take-off.

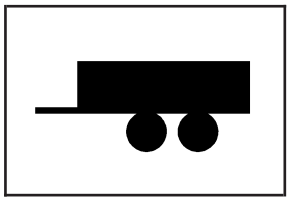
When accelerating your vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to shift into second gear. A higher gear ratio allows you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

Tow/Haul Mode



Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tow/Haul mode. The button is located on instrument panel under the climate controls. You should use this feature to assist when towing or hauling a heavy load.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



When Tow/Haul is activated the Tow/Haul symbol will illuminate on the instrument panel cluster. See *Tow/Haul Mode* under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41* for more information.

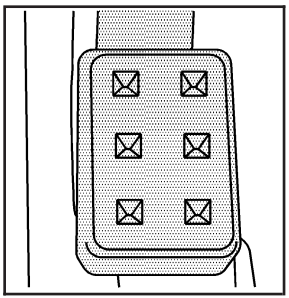
Grade Braking

Grade Braking assists when driving on a downhill grade. It maintains the vehicle's speed by automatically implementing a shift schedule that uses the engine and the transmission to slow the vehicle. This reduces wear on the brakes system and increases control of the vehicle. The system constantly monitors the vehicle's speed, acceleration, throttle position, and whether the brake pedal is being pressed, and determines when to keep the current vehicle speed or to slow down. The system will then automatically command downshifts that reduces the vehicles speed, until the brake pedal is no longer being pressed. This indicates the desired vehicle speed has been reached.

The tow/haul mode and grade braking shift modes can be activated by pressing the button on the instrument panel console. While in the DSC mode, grade braking is deactivated, allowing the driver to select a gear.

See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-30*.

Parking Brake

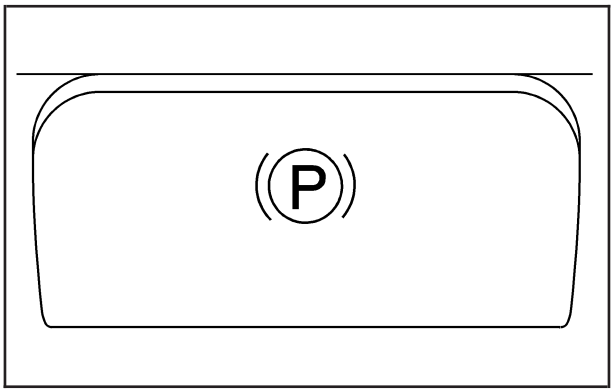


The parking brake pedal is located on the lower portion of the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot and push the parking brake pedal down with your left foot.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light on the instrument panel cluster should come on. If it does not, you need to have your vehicle serviced. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38* for more information.



To release the parking brake, pull the release lever located to the left of the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

A warning chime will sound if the parking brake is set, the ignition is on, and the vehicle begins to move. To stop the chime, fully release the parking brake.

If you are towing a trailer and parking on a hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Into PARK (P)

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41*.

Use this procedure to shift into PARK (P):

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot.
2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) by pressing the button on the front of the shift lever while pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle. Release the button.
3. With your right foot still holding the brake pedal down, set the parking brake with your left foot. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34* for more information.
4. Turn the key to LOCK/OFF.
5. Remove the key from the ignition switch and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the key in your hand, the vehicle is in PARK (P).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave your vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and your parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into PARK (P), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pushing the button on the shift lever. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into PARK (P).

Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift your transmission into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called “torque lock.” To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver’s seat. To find out how, see “Shifting Into PARK (P)” listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Out of PARK (P)

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in PARK (P) with the shift lever button fully released, and
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of PARK (P), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If your vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40* for more information.

To shift out of PARK (P) use the following:

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Then press the shift lever button.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of PARK (P):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from PARK (P), consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service.

Parking Over Things That Burn

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you cannot see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- **The exhaust system sounds strange or different.**
- **Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- **Repairs were not done correctly.**
- **Your vehicle or the exhaust system has been modified improperly.**

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- **Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and**
- **Have your vehicle fixed immediately.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Running the Engine While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier caution under *Engine Exhaust on page 2-39*.

Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the climate control fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.

Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. See *Winter Driving on page 4-29*.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into PARK (P) on page 2-36*.

If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Mirrors

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror with OnStar® controls. For more information about OnStar®, see *OnStar® System on page 2-47*.

⏻ **(On/Off):** The on/off button, located on the lower left side of the mirror, is used for the automatic dimming functions of the rearview mirror.

Mirror Operation

The automatic dimming feature comes on each time the vehicle is started. Automatic dimming reduces the glare of lights from behind the vehicle.

To turn the automatic dimming feature on or off, press and release the on/off button. The indicator light will illuminate when this feature is on.

Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar® and Compass

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror with a compass and OnStar® controls. For more information about OnStar®, see *OnStar® System on page 2-47*.

The mirror has an eight-point compass display in the upper right corner of the mirror. When on, the compass automatically calibrates, or sets the driving direction, as the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle has the navigation option, the direction the vehicle is facing will be displayed on the navigation screen.

⏻ **(On/Off):** The on/off button is located on the lower left side of the mirror and is used for the automatic dimming and compass functions of the rearview mirror.

Mirror Operation

The automatic dimming feature comes on each time the vehicle is started.

To turn the automatic dimming feature on or off, press the on/off or AUTO button. The indicator light will illuminate when this feature is on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass Operation

Press the on/off button once to turn the compass on or off.

When the ignition and the compass feature are on, the compass will show two character boxes for approximately two seconds. After two seconds, the mirror will display the current compass direction.

Compass Calibration

If after two seconds the display does not show a compass direction, (N for North for example), there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, note pad holder, or similar object. If the letter C appears in the compass window, the compass may need to be reset or calibrated.

The mirror can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction.

The compass can be calibrated by pressing and holding the on/off button until a C is shown in the compass display.

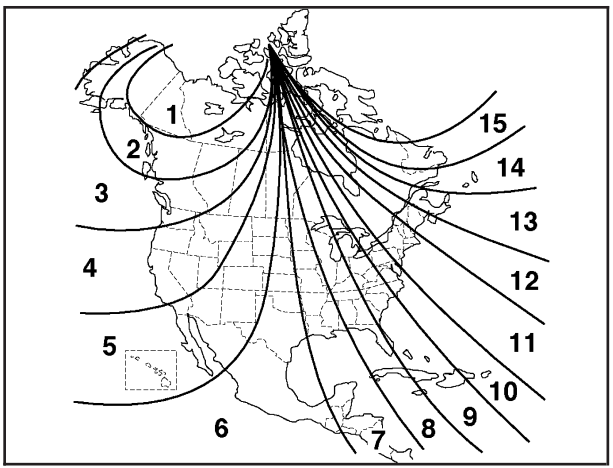
Compass Variance

Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If the mirror is not adjusted for compass variance, the compass could give false readings.

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if the vehicle is driven outside zone eight. Under certain circumstances, such as a long distance, cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust the compass variance.

To adjust for compass variance, do the following:

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the zone map that follows.



2. Press and hold the on/off button until a zone number appears on the display.

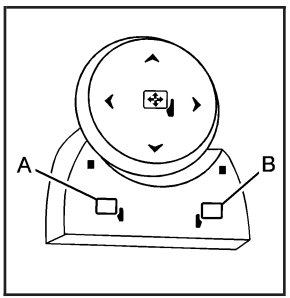
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Once the zone number appears on the display, press the on/off button quickly until you reach the correct zone number. If C appears in the compass window, the compass may need calibration. See “Compass Calibration” listed previously.

Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Outside Power Heated Mirrors



The power mirror controls are located on the driver’s door armrest and operate both outside rearview mirrors.

- Press (A) to select the driver’s side mirror. The LED indicator will turn on to indicate that this mirror is selected. Then press the arrows located on the four-way control pad to adjust the mirror. Press (A) again to deselect the mirror. The LED indicator will turn off to indicate that this mirror is de-selected.
- Press (B) to select the passenger’s side mirror. The LED indicator will turn on to indicate that this mirror is selected. Then press the arrows located on the four-way control pad to adjust the mirror. Press (B) again to deselect the mirror. The LED indicator will turn off to indicate that this mirror is de-selected.

The preferred position can be stored in memory if the vehicle has the memory option. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 1-5* for more information.

The mirrors can be manually folded inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash or a confined space. To fold, push the mirror toward the vehicle. To return the mirror to its original position, push outward. Be sure to return both mirrors to their original unfolded position before driving.

When the rear window defogger is turned on, both outside rearview mirrors are heated to help clear them of ice, snow, and condensation. See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-23* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror

The driver's outside mirror may have an automatic dimming feature that helps to reduce glare from other vehicles headlamps. This feature is controlled by the on and off settings on the automatic dimming rearview mirror. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar® on page 2-41*.

Park Tilt Mirrors

If the vehicle has memory seat and mirrors, the driver's or passenger's mirror can tilt to a pre-selected position when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R). Use this feature to view the curb when parallel parking.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R) and after a delay, both mirrors return to their original position.

The driver can select either mirror, or both mirrors, to be activated with this feature. Select or deselect mirrors through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62* for more information on programming the park tilt mirrors.

If the park tilt feature is turned off using the Driver Information Center (DIC), the park tilt feature will not operate.

If further adjustment is needed after the mirror is tilted, the mirror controls can be used. See *Outside Power Heated Mirrors on page 2-43* for more information.

Outside Convex Mirror

⚠ CAUTION:

A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver's seat. This mirror does not have a dimming feature.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Object Detection Systems

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA)

If your vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, it helps you park easier and avoid other vehicles while in REVERSE (R). It operates at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). It can determine how close objects are to the rear bumper, up to 5 feet (1.5 m) behind your vehicle. The distance sensors are located on the rear bumper.

⚠ CAUTION:

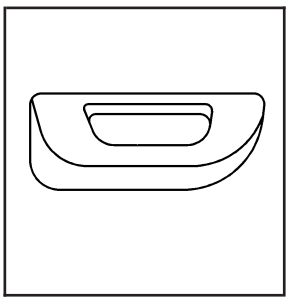
The Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system does not replace driver vision. It cannot detect:

- **objects that are below the bumper, underneath the vehicle, or if they are too close or far from the vehicle**
- **children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

If you do not use proper care before and while backing; vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Even with URPA, always check behind your vehicle before backing up. While backing, be sure to look for objects and check your vehicle's mirrors.



The display is located above the liftgate glass and can be seen by looking over your right shoulder.

URPA uses three color-coded lights to provide distance and system information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

How the System Works

URPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into REVERSE (R). The rear display will then briefly illuminate to let you know the system is working.

URPA operates only at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). If you are above this speed, the red light on the rear display will flash.

To be detected, objects must be at least 10 inches (25.4 cm) off the ground and below liftgate level. Objects must also be within 5 feet (1.5 m) from your rear bumper. This distance may be less during warmer or humid weather.

A single beep will sound the first time an object is detected between 20 inches (0.5 m) and 5 feet (1.5 m) away. Beeping will occur for three seconds when you are closer than 1 foot (0.3 m) from the object.

The following describes what will occur with the URPA display as you get closer to a detected object:

Description	English	Metric
amber light	5 ft	1.5 m
amber/amber lights	40 in	1.0 m
amber/amber/red lights	20 in	0.5 m
amber/amber/red lights flashing and beep for three seconds	1 ft	0.3 m

The system can be disabled using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See “Parking Assist” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*.

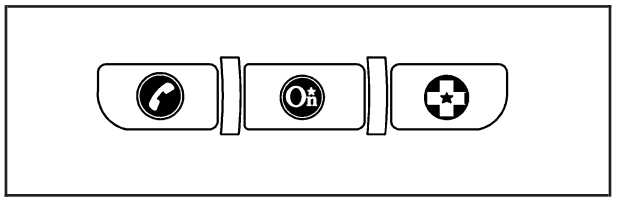
When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

- The driver disables the system.
- The parking brake pedal is depressed.
- The ultrasonic sensors are not clean. Keep your vehicle’s rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-94*.
- A trailer was attached to your vehicle, or a bicycle or an object was hanging out of your liftgate during your last drive cycle, the red light may illuminate. Once the attached object is removed, URPA will return to normal operation.
- A tow bar is attached to your vehicle.
- The vehicle’s bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer to repair the system.
- Other conditions may affect system performance, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck.

If the system is still disabled, after driving forward at least 15 mph (25 km/h), take your vehicle to your dealer/retailer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

OnStar® System



OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If your airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar Emergency advisors who can request emergency services be sent to your location. If you lock your keys in the vehicle, call OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR and they can send a signal to unlock your doors. If you need roadside assistance, press the OnStar button and they can contact Roadside Service for you.

OnStar service is provided to you subject to the OnStar Terms and Conditions. You may cancel your OnStar service at any time by contacting OnStar. A complete OnStar Owner's Guide and the OnStar Terms and Conditions are included in the vehicle's OnStar Subscriber glove box literature. For more information, visit onstar.com or onstar.ca, contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080, or press the OnStar button to speak with an OnStar advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Not all OnStar features are available on all vehicles. To check if your vehicle is equipped to provide the services described below, or for a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in your glove box or visit onstar.com.

OnStar Services

For new vehicles with OnStar, the Safe & Sound Plan, or the Directions & Connections Plan is included for one year from the date of purchase. You can extend this plan beyond the first year, or upgrade to the Directions & Connections Plan. For more information, press the OnStar button to speak with an advisor. Some OnStar services (such as Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance) may not be available until you register with OnStar.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Available Services with Safe & Sound Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification (AACN) (If equipped)
- Link to Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar Vehicle Diagnostics
- GM Goodwrench® On Demand Diagnostics
- OnStar Hands-Free Calling with 30 complimentary minutes
- OnStar Virtual Advisor (U.S. Only)

Available Services included with Directions & Connections Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan Services
- Driving Directions - Advisor delivered or OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation (If equipped)
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

OnStar Hands-Free Calling

OnStar Hands-Free Calling allows eligible OnStar subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and can be used with OnStar Pre-Paid Minute Packages. Hands-Free Calling may also be linked to a Verizon Wireless service plan in the U.S. or a Bell Mobility service plan in Canada, depending on eligibility. To find out more, refer to the OnStar Owner's Guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit www.onstar.com or www.onstar.ca, or speak with an OnStar advisor by pressing the OnStar button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

OnStar Virtual Advisor

OnStar Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling that uses your minutes to access location-based weather, local traffic reports, and stock quotes. By pressing the phone button and giving a few simple voice commands, you can browse through the various topics. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information (Only available in the continental U.S.).

OnStar Steering Wheel Controls

Your vehicle may have a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar Hands-Free Calling. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-92* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

On some vehicles, you may have to hold the button for a few seconds and give the command “ONSTAR” in order to activate the OnStar Hands-Free Calling feature.

On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voicemail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar Owner’s Guide for more information.

How OnStar Service Works

In order to provide you with OnStar services, your vehicle’s OnStar system has the capability of recording and transmitting vehicle information. This information is automatically sent to an OnStar Call Center at the time of an OnStar button press, Emergency button press or if your airbags or AACN system deploys. The vehicle information usually includes your GPS location and, in the event of a crash, additional information regarding the accident that your vehicle has been involved in (e.g. the direction from which your vehicle was hit). When you use the Virtual Advisor feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling, your vehicle also sends OnStar your GPS location so that we can provide you with location-based services.

OnStar service cannot work unless your vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area.

OnStar service also cannot work unless you are in a place where the wireless service provider OnStar has hired for that area has coverage, network capacity and reception when the service is needed, and technology that is compatible with the OnStar service. Not all services are available everywhere, particularly in remote or enclosed areas, or at all times.

OnStar service that involves location information about your vehicle cannot work unless GPS satellite signals are unobstructed and available in that place as well.

Your vehicle must have a working electrical system (including adequate battery power) for the OnStar equipment to operate. There are other problems OnStar cannot control that may prevent OnStar from providing OnStar service to you at any particular time or place. Some examples are damage to important parts of your vehicle in an accident, hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather or wireless phone network congestion.

Your Responsibility

You may need to increase the volume of your radio to hear the OnStar advisor. If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, this means that your system is not functioning properly and should be checked by your dealer/retailer. If the light appears clear (no light is appearing), your OnStar subscription has expired. You can always press the OnStar button to confirm that your OnStar equipment is active.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Universal Home Remote System

Universal Home Remote System

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held radio-frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Grant of Equipment Authorization Certificate number is KOBGTV06A.

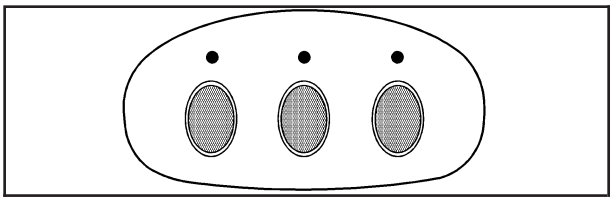
This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The Canadian Registration ID number is 3521A-GTV06A.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED)



Your vehicle may have the Universal Home Remote System. If there are three round Light Emitting Diode (LED) indicator lights above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions below.

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not use this system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in programming the transmitter.

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles, as well as, for future programming. You only need the original remote control transmitter for Fixed Code programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale or lease termination of the vehicle, the programmed buttons should be erased for security purposes. See “Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons” later in this section.

When programming a garage door, it is advised to park outside of the garage. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or security device you are programming.

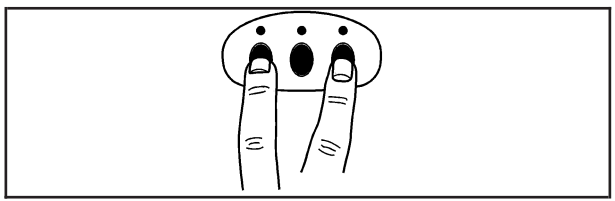
Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code

If you have questions or need help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to www.learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold after 1996 are Rolling Code units.

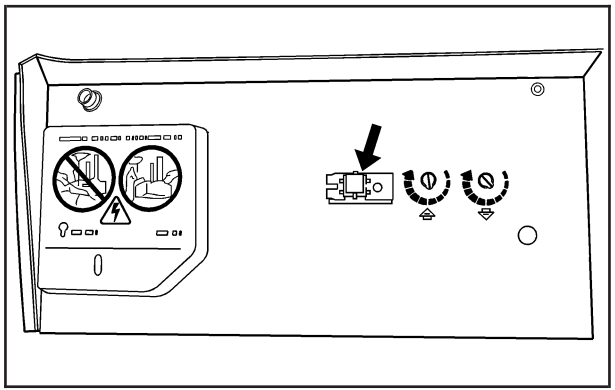
Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before you begin. If you do not follow these actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

To program up to three devices:



1. From inside the vehicle, press the two outside buttons at the same time for one to two seconds, and immediately release them.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. It can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit and may be a colored button. Press this button. After you press this button, you will have 30 seconds to complete the following steps.
3. Immediately return to your vehicle. Press and hold the Universal Home Remote button that you would like to use to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light, above the selected button, should slowly blink. You may need to hold the button from five to 20 seconds.
4. Immediately, within one second, release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
5. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Rolling Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-5, choosing a different function button in Step 3 than what you used for the garage door opener.

If these instructions do not work, you probably have a Fixed Code garage door opener. Follow the Programming instructions that follow for a Fixed Code garage door opener.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

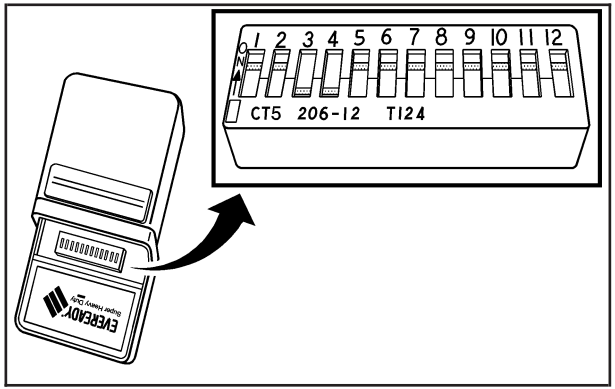
Programming Universal Home Remote — Fixed Code

If you have questions or need help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to www.learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold before 1996 are Fixed Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before you begin. If you do not follow these actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

To program up to three devices:

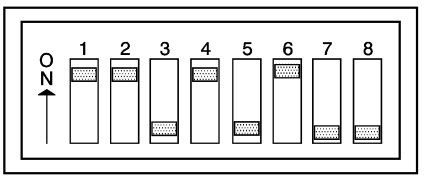


1. To verify if you have a Fixed Code garage door opener, remove the battery cover on your hand held transmitter supplied by the manufacturer of your garage door opener motor. If you see a row of dip switches similar to the graphic above, you have a Fixed Code garage door opener. If you do not see a row of dip switches, return to the previous section for Programming Universal Home Remote – Rolling Code.

   Your hand held transmitter may have between eight to 12 dip switches depending on the brand of transmitter.

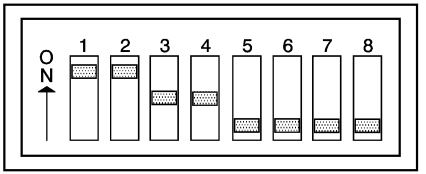
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) may also have a row of dip switches that can be used when programming the Universal Home Remote. If the total number of switches on the motor head and hand held transmitter are different, or if the dip switch settings are different, use the dip switch settings on the motor head unit to program your Universal Home Remote. The motor head dip switch settings can also be used when you do not have the original hand held transmitter.



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Off	On	Off	On	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Two Positions



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Neutral	Neutral	Off	Off	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Middle	Middle	Right	Right	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Three Positions

Your panel of switches may not appear exactly as they do in the examples above, but they should be similar.

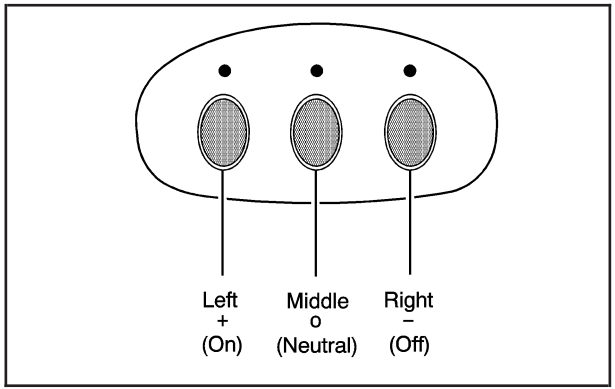
The switch positions on your hand-held transmitter may be labeled, as follows:

- A switch in the up position may be labeled as “Up,” “+,” or “On.”
- A switch in the down position may be labeled as “Down,” “–,” or “Off.”
- A switch in the middle position may be labeled as “Middle,” “0,” or “Neutral.”

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Write down the eight to 12 switch settings from left to right as follows:
   - When a switch is in the up position, write “Left.”
   - When a switch is in the down position, write “Right.”
   - If a switch is set between the up and down position, write “Middle.”

   The switch settings that you wrote down in Step 2 will now become the button strokes you enter into the Universal Home Remote in Step 4. Be sure to enter the switch settings that you wrote down in Step 2, in order from left to right, into the Universal Home Remote, when completing Step 4.
3. From inside your vehicle, first firmly press all three buttons at the same time for about three seconds. Release the buttons to put the Universal Home Remote into programming mode.



4. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Enter each switch setting from Step 2 into your vehicle’s Universal Home Remote. You will have two and one-half minutes to complete Step 4. Now press one button on the Universal Home Remote for each switch setting as follows:
   - If you wrote “Left,” press the left button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote “Right,” press the right button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote “Middle,” press the middle button in the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. After entering all of the switch positions, again, firmly press and release all three buttons at the same time. The indicator lights will turn on.
6. Press and hold the button you would like to use to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light above the selected button should slowly blink. You may need to hold the button from five to 55 seconds.
7. Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
8. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Fixed Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-8, choosing a different button in Step 6 than what you used for the garage door opener.

Using Universal Home Remote

Press and hold the appropriate button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Reprogramming Universal Home Remote Buttons

You can reprogram any of the three buttons by repeating the instructions.

Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

You should erase the programmed buttons when you sell or terminate your lease.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To erase either Rolling Code or Fixed Code on the Universal Home Remote device:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons at the same time for approximately 20 seconds, until the indicator lights, located directly above the buttons, begin to blink rapidly.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release both buttons. The codes from all buttons will be erased.

For help or information on the Universal Home Remote System, call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices on page 7-6*.

Storage Areas

Glove Box

To open, lift the handle up. Use the key to lock and unlock.

Cupholder(s)

Your vehicle has cupholders located between the front seats. Slide the cover back to expose them. There are also cupholders in the armrest of the second row seat. Press the panel on the front of the armrest to expose the cupholders. On the outboard sides of the third row there may also be cupholders.

Center Console Storage

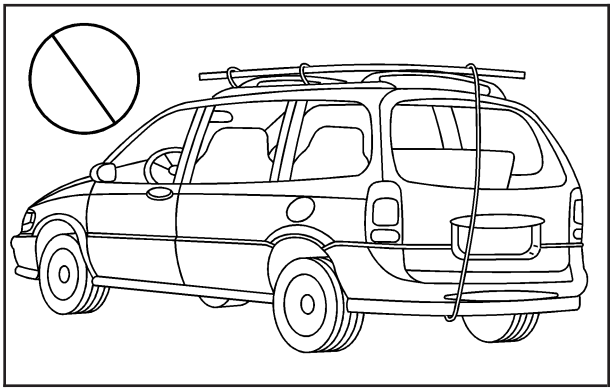
Your vehicle has a center console storage area located between the front seats. It includes storage areas, and accessory power outlet(s) on the rear of the console.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Luggage Carrier

⚠ CAUTION:

If you try to carry something on top of your vehicle that is longer or wider than the luggage carrier — like paneling, plywood, a mattress and so forth — the wind can catch it as you drive along. This can cause you to lose control. What you are carrying could be violently torn off, and this could cause you or other drivers to have a collision, and of course damage your vehicle. You may be able to carry something like this inside. But, never carry something longer or wider than the luggage carrier on top of your vehicle.



If your vehicle has a luggage carrier, you can load things on top of your vehicle. The luggage carrier has side rails attached to the roof. You can get sliding crossrails through your dealer to use for tying things down. These let you load some things on top of your vehicle, as long as they are not wider or longer than the luggage carrier.

Notice: **Loading cargo on the luggage carrier that weighs more than 100 lbs (45 kg) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle may damage your vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests on the slats as far forward as possible and against the side rails, making sure to fasten it securely.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cargo Cover

If your vehicle has a cargo cover, you can use it to cover items in the rear of the vehicle. Pull the cover from the passenger's side to the driver's side and slide the ends into the slots to secure it. When it is not in use, take the ends out of the slots and allow the cover to roll back up.

Cargo Management System

Your vehicle may have a cargo management system. It provides extra storage space for the rear of the vehicle.

The cargo management system has three compartments. The one closest to the front of the vehicle opens from behind the second row. The center compartment has a divider. The compartment closest to the rear of the vehicle has a removable storage bin.

Sunroof

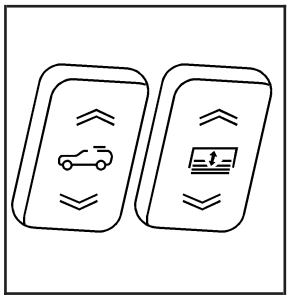
Sunroof (Ultra View)

⚠ CAUTION:

People who are in a crash and not wearing a safety belt properly can suffer much worse injuries. They can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it, and be seriously injured or killed. This is true for any vehicle occupant, in any motor vehicle. In a rollover or other crash, the Ultra View® roof can be damaged or destroyed. People who are unbelted would be at risk of being ejected from the vehicle. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.

Your vehicle may have an Ultra View® sunroof over the first two rows of seats. The ignition must be turned to ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active to operate it. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



The sunroof/sunshade switches are located in the headliner between the driver and front passenger.

One switch operates the sunroof and the other switch operates the sunshade.

Press the back of the sunroof switch to open the sunroof. When the switch is pressed to the first stop the sunroof will open to a desired position. Press the switch to the second stop to express open the sunroof to a preset comfort position. Press the second stop again to fully express open the sunroof. Press the front of the switch to close the sunroof. The first stop will close the sunroof at a desired position at normal speed, and the second stop will express close the roof.

Press the back of the sunshade switch to open the sunshade. Press the front of the switch to the first stop to close the sunshade to a desired position at a normal speed. Press the switch forward to the second stop to express close the sunshade.

Anti-Pinch Feature

If an object is in the path of the sunroof when it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof will then reverse. To close the sunroof once it has re-opened, remove the obstruction and press the front of the sunroof switch.

Resynchronization

To resynchronize the sunroof and sunshade, do the following.

1. With the engine running, press and hold both the sunroof switch in the open position and the sunshade switch in the closed position for six seconds.
2. Release both buttons.
3. When the sunroof reaches the fully closed position, the sunshade will close.
4. After the sunroof and sunshade have fully closed, continue to hold the sunroof switch in the closed position for an additional three or four seconds to complete the resynchronization process.

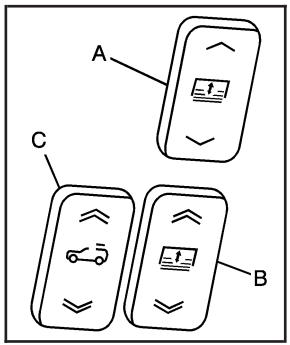
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sunroof (Ultra View Plus)

⚠ CAUTION:

People who are in a crash and not wearing a safety belt properly can suffer much worse injuries. They can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it, and be seriously injured or killed. This is true for any vehicle occupant, in any motor vehicle. In a rollover or other crash, the Ultra View® roof can be damaged or destroyed. People who are unbelted would be at risk of being ejected from the vehicle. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.

Your vehicle may have an Ultra View® sunroof over the first two rows of seats and a smaller sunroof over the third row seat. Both have sunshades, but the back sunroof does not open. The ignition must be turned to ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active to operate it. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26*



A. Rear Sunshade
B. Front Sunshade
C. Front Sunroof

The sunroof/sunshade switches are located in the headliner between the driver and front passenger.

One switch (C) operates the front sunroof and another switch (B) operates the front sunshade. The third switch (A) is for the rear sunshade.

Press the back of the sunroof switch (C) to open the sunroof. Press the switch to the first stop to open the sunroof to a desired position. Press the switch to the second stop to express-open the sunroof to a preset comfort stop. Press the switch at the second stop again to express-open the sunroof completely. Press the front of the sunroof switch to close the sunroof. Press the switch to the first stop to close the sunroof to a desired position. Press the front of the switch to the second stop to express close the sunroof.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press the back of the front sunshade switch (B) to open it. Press it to the first stop to open the front sunshade to a desired position. Press it again to express open the sunshade. Press the front of the front sunshade switch to close it. Press to the first stop to close it to a desired position. Press the switch to the second stop to express close the front sunshade

Press the back of the rear sunshade switch (A) to open the rear sunshade. Press the front of the switch to close the rear sunshade.

Anti-Pinch Feature

If an object is in the path of the sunroof when it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof will then reverse. To close the sunroof once it has re-opened, remove the obstruction and press the front of the sunroof switch.

Resynchronization

To resynchronize the front sunroof and front and rear sunshades, do the following.

1. With the engine running, press and hold the rear sunshade switch in the closed position for about 15 seconds – the shade will move to the stop position.
2. Briefly release the button, and press the rear sunshade switch in the closed position again. The shade will now move to the fully open position and then return to the fully closed position. Keep the switch pushed in the closed position for the entire open/close cycle of the shade.
3. At the same time, press and hold the front sunroof switch in the open position and the front sunshade switch in the closed position for about six seconds.

   When the front sunroof reaches the fully closed position, the front sunshade will close.
4. After the sunroof and sunshade have fully closed, continue to hold the sunroof switch in the closed position for an additional three or four seconds to complete the resynchronization process.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
- Other Warning Devices 3-6
- Horn 3-6
- Tilt Wheel 3-6
- Heated Steering Wheel 3-7
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7
- Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-8
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 3-8
- Flash-to-Pass 3-9
- Windshield Wipers 3-9
- Windshield Washer 3-10
- Rear Window Wiper/Washer 3-11
- Headlamp Washer 3-12
- Cruise Control 3-12
- Headlamps 3-16
- Wiper Activated Headlamps 3-16
- Headlamps on Reminder 3-16
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-17
- Fog Lamps 3-18
- Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 3-19
- Instrument Panel Brightness 3-19
- Entry Lighting 3-19
- Parade Dimming 3-19
- Reading Lamps 3-20
- Electric Power Management 3-20
- Accessory Power Outlet(s) 3-21
- Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter 3-21
- Analog Clock 3-22

Climate Controls 3-23
- Dual Climate Control System 3-23
- Outlet Adjustment 3-29
- Rear Air Conditioning System 3-29
- Passenger Compartment Air Filter 3-30

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-31
- Instrument Panel Cluster 3-32
- Speedometer and Odometer 3-33
- Tachometer 3-33
- Engine Speed Limiter 3-33
- Safety Belt Reminders 3-33
- Airbag Readiness Light 3-34
- Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-35
- Charging System Light 3-37
- Brake System Warning Light 3-38
- Antilock Brake System Warning Light 3-39
- Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light 3-39
- Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 3-40
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gage 3-40
- Tire Pressure Light 3-41
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-42
- Oil Pressure Light 3-44
- Security Light 3-45
- Fog Lamp Light 3-45
- Lights On Reminder 3-46
- Cruise Control Light 3-46
- Highbeam On Light 3-46
- Tow/Haul Mode Light 3-46
- Fuel Gage 3-47

Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-47
- DIC Operation and Displays 3-48
- DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
- DIC Vehicle Customization 3-62

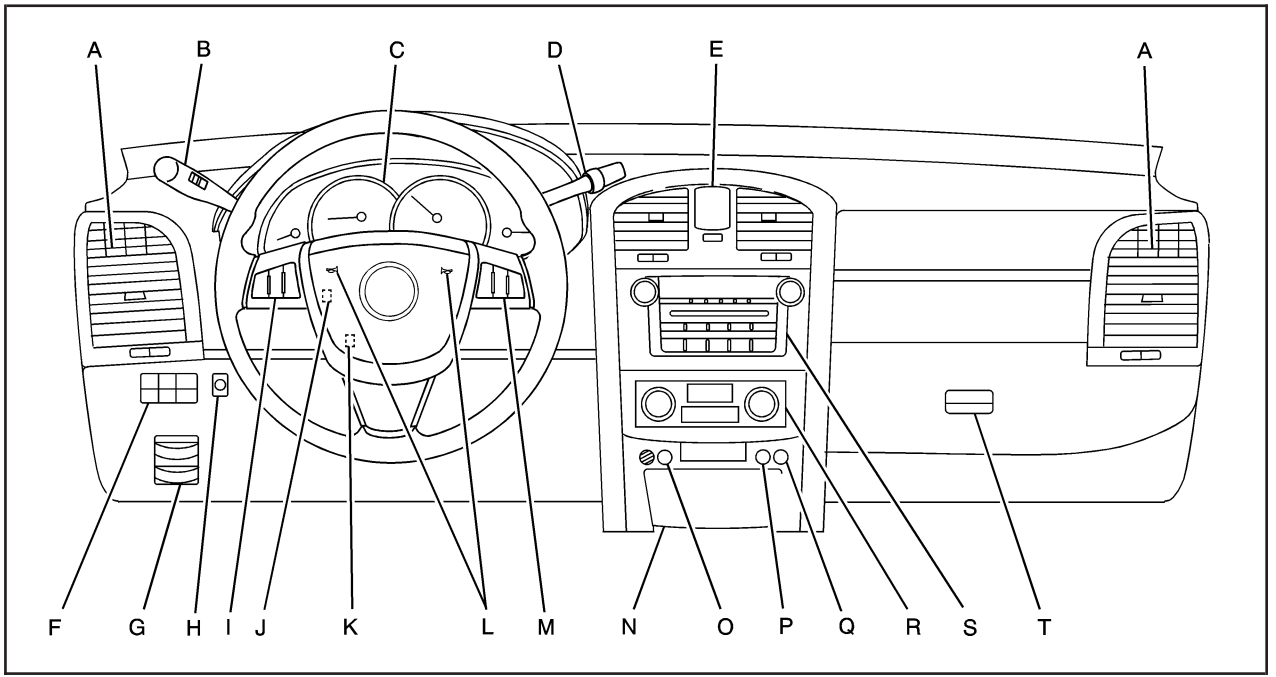
Audio System(s) 3-70
- Setting the Time 3-71
- Radio(s) (MP3) 3-75
- Using an MP3 3-84
- XM Radio Messages 3-89
- Navigation/Radio System 3-90
- Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System 3-90
- Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-90
- Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-92
- Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-92
- Radio Reception 3-93
- Rear Side Window Antenna 3-94
- XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-94

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTES

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel Overview



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The main components of the instrument panel are the following:

A. Air Outlets. See *Outlet Adjustment on page 3-29*.

B. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.

C. Instrument Panel Cluster. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-32*.

D. Windshield Wiper Lever. See *Windshield Wipers on page 3-9*.

E. Analog Clock. See *Analog Clock on page 3-22*.

F. Driver Information Center Controls (DIC). See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*.

G. Hood Release. See *Hood Release on page 5-11*. Parking Brake Release. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34*.

H. Instrument Panel Brightness Control. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-19*.

I. Cruise Control Buttons. See *Cruise Control on page 3-12*.

J. Tilt Wheel Lever. See *Tilt Wheel on page 3-6*.

K. Adjustable Pedal Button (If Equipped). See *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 2-28*.

L. Horn. See *Horn on page 3-6*.

M. Audio Steering Wheel Controls. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-92*.

N. Ashtray (If Equipped). See *Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter on page 3-21*.

O. Traction Control Button. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5*.

P. Tow/Haul Selector Button (If Equipped). See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33*.

Q. Hazard Warning Flasher Button. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

R. Dual Climate Control System. See *Dual Climate Control System on page 3-23*.

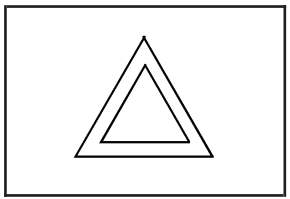
S. Audio System. See *Audio System(s) on page 3-70*.

T. Glove Box. See *Glove Box on page 2-57*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hazard Warning Flashers

The hazard warning flashers let you warn the police and others that you have a problem. The front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.



The hazard warning flasher button is located towards the center of the instrument panel.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

While the hazard warning flashers are on, the turn signals do not work.

The hazard warning flashers work no matter what position the key is in, and even if the key is not in the ignition switch.

Other Warning Devices

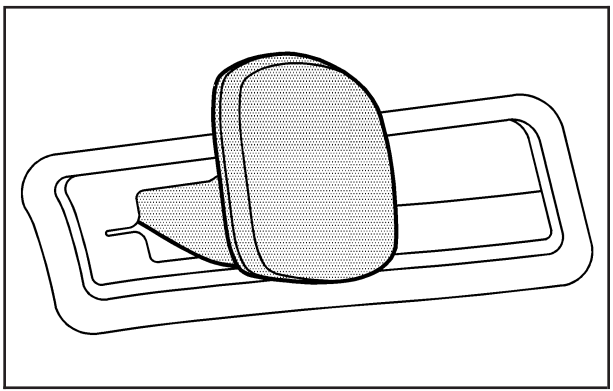
If you carry reflective triangles, you can set them up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.

Horn

Press near or on the horn symbols on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Tilt Wheel

A tilt wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can raise it to the highest level to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.



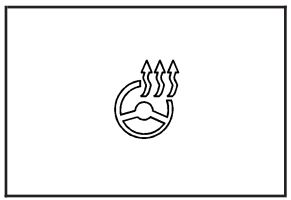
The lever that allows you to tilt the steering wheel is located on the left side of the steering column.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To tilt the wheel, hold the steering wheel and pull the lever. Then move the steering wheel to a comfortable position and release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Heated Steering Wheel

Your vehicle may have a heated steering wheel.

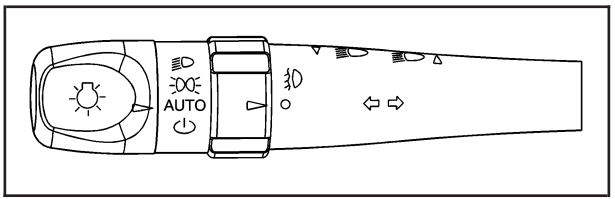


The button with this symbol is located on the left side of the steering wheel.

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. A light on the button will display when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel will take about three minutes to start heating.

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



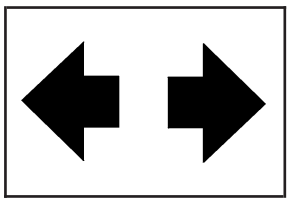
The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

- Turn and Lane-Change Signals. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 3-8*.
- Exterior Lamp Control. See *Headlamps on page 3-16*.
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8*.
- Flash-To-Pass Feature. See *Flash-to-Pass on page 3-9*.
- Fog Lamps. See *Fog Lamps on page 3-18*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn and Lane-Change Signals

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. The lever returns automatically when the turn is complete.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is complete. The lever returns to its original position when it is released.

Rapid flashing of arrows when signaling for a turn or lane change may be caused by a burned-out signal bulb. Other driver's will not see the signal.

Replace burned-out bulbs to help avoid possible accidents. Check the fuse and for burned-out bulbs if the arrow fails to work when signaling a turn. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-101* for more information.

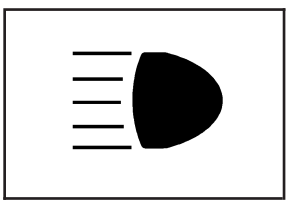
Turn Signal On Chime

If the turn signal is left on for about ¾ mile (1.2 km), a warning chime will sound and the TURN SIGNAL ON message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. See "Turn Signal On" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

Push forward on the turn signal/multifunction lever to change the headlamps from low to high beam. Pull the lever back and then release it to change from high to low beam.

If the vehicle is turned off while the high beams are on, they will come on the next time the vehicle is started.



The highbeam light on the instrument panel cluster, comes on while the high-beam headlamps are on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

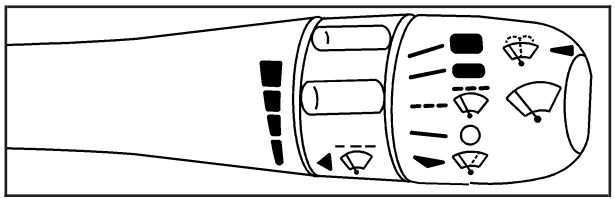
Flash-to-Pass

This feature allows you to use the high-beam headlamps to signal the driver in front of you that you want to pass.

Pull and hold the turn signal/multifunction lever toward you to use this feature. When this is done the following will occur:

- If the headlamps are off, in low-beam or in Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) mode, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as the lever is held there. Release the lever to turn them off.
- If the headlamps are in high-beam mode, they will switch to low beam. To return to high-beam, push the lever forward.

Windshield Wipers



The lever on the right side of the steering column operates the windshield wipers.

(Mist): Pull the lever down and release it for a single wiping cycle. The lever will return to its original position. For more cycles, hold the lever down before releasing it.

(Off): Put the lever in this position to turn off the wipers.

(Delay): Put the lever in this position to set a delay between wipes. Turn the delay adjustment band to set the length of the delay.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

(Delay Adjustment): Use this band to set the length of the delay between wipes when using the delay feature. The closer you move the band toward mist, the longer the delay. The windshield wiper lever must be in delay for this feature to work.

(Low Speed): Put the lever in this position for slow, steady wiping cycles.

(High Speed): Put the lever in this position for rapid wiping cycles.

If the windshield wipers are in use for about six seconds while you are driving, the exterior lamps will come on automatically if the exterior lamp control is in AUTO. See *Wiper Activated Headlamps on page 3-16* for more information.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they are frozen to the windshield, gently loosen or thaw them. If the blades do become damaged, install new blades. For more information, see *Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-49*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker will stop the motor until it cools down. Clear away snow or ice to prevent an overload.

Windshield Washer

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

The windshield washer button is located at the end of the windshield wiper lever.

(Washer Fluid): Press this button to wash the windshield. Washer fluid will squirt onto the windshield and the wipers will run for a few cycles to clear the windshield. For more wash cycles, press and hold the button.

If your vehicle is low on washer fluid, the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

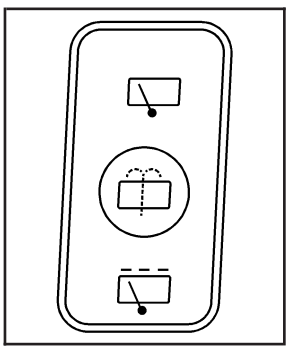
If the headlamps are on when you wash the windshield, the headlamp washer will turn on, if your vehicle has them. Both the windshield and the headlamps will be washed. See *Headlamp Washer on page 3-12*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Window Wiper/Washer

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.



The switch for the rear washer/wiper is located in the overhead console.

(Rear Wiper): Press this side of the button to turn the rear wiper on.

(Washer Fluid): Press this button to wash and wipe the window.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid bottle as the windshield washer. However, the rear window washer will run out of fluid before the windshield washer. If you can wash your windshield but not your rear windows, check the fluid level.

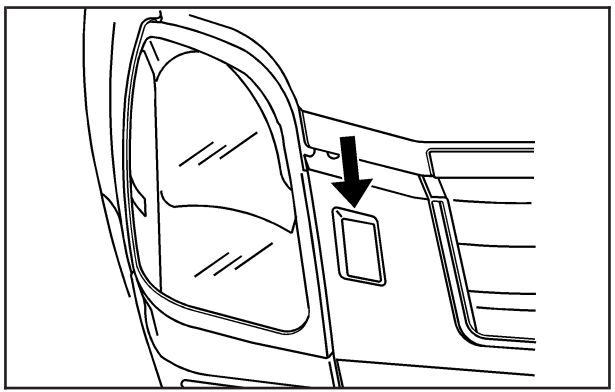
(Delay): Press this side of the button to turn on delayed wiping.

To turn either the delay or rear wiper setting off, press the opposite side of the button to turn it to the off position. Pressing the button all the way down on either side will activate a wiper setting.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamp Washer

Your vehicle may have headlamp washers. The headlamp washers clear debris from the headlamp lenses.



The headlamp washers are located to the inside of the headlamps.

To wash the headlamps, press the washer button located at the end of the windshield wiper lever. Both the headlamps and the windshield will be washed. After the first wash, the headlamps will be washed after the fifth press of the windshield washer button.

The headlamps must be on to be washed. If the headlamps are off, only the windshield will be washed when the washer button is pressed. If the washer fluid is low, the headlamp washers will not work.

See *Windshield Washer on page 3-10* for additional information.

Cruise Control

⚠ CAUTION:

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

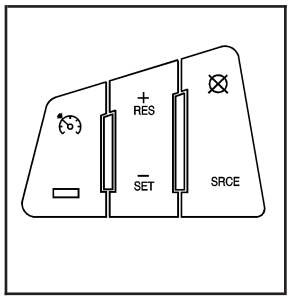
Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

Cruise control enables your vehicle to maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more while your foot is off the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

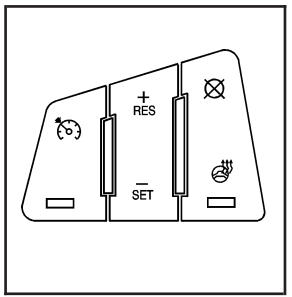
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.

If your vehicle has the StabiliTrak® system and begins to limit wheel spin while using cruise control, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7*. Turn the cruise control back on, when road conditions allow safe usage.



Cruise Control



Cruise Control w/Heated Steering Wheel

The cruise control buttons are located on the outboard side of the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press this button to turn the system on and off. The indicator light on the button turns on when cruise control is on and turns off when cruise control is off.

+ RES (Resume/Accelerate): Press this button to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

SET – (Set/Coast): Press this button to set the speed or make the vehicle slow down.

(Cancel): Press this button to cancel cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting Cruise Control

Cruise control will not work if the parking brake is set, or if the master cylinder brake fluid level is low.

The cruise control light on the instrument panel cluster comes on after the cruise control has been set to the desired speed.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Press the cruise control On/Off button.
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press the SET– button located on the steering wheel and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the brakes are applied while the cruise control is at a set speed, the cruise control disengages. But it does not need to be reset.

Once the vehicle reaches about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, press the +RES button on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the speed selected previously and stays there.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

To increase the cruise speed while using cruise control:

- Press and hold the +RES button on the steering wheel until the new desired speed is reached, and then release the button.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press the +RES button. Each time this is done, your vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

To reduce the vehicle speed while using cruise control:

- Press and hold the SET– button on the steering wheel until the desired lower speed is reached, and then release the button.
- To slow down in very small amounts, press the SET– button on the steering wheel briefly. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle slows down to the cruise control speed that was set earlier.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. If the brake is applied the cruise control is disengaged. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and do not use cruise control on steep hills.

Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press the ⊗ button on the steering wheel.
- Press the button on the steering wheel.

Erasing Speed Memory

When the cruise control or the ignition is turned off, the cruise control set speed memory is erased.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamps

The exterior lamp control is located in the middle of the turn signal/multifunction lever.

(Exterior Lamp Control): Turn the control with this symbol on it to operate the exterior lamps.

The exterior lamp control has four positions:

(Off): Turn the control to this position to turn off all lamps, except the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

AUTO (Automatic): Turn the control to this position to put the headlamps in automatic mode. AUTO mode will turn the exterior lamps on and off depending upon how much light is available outside of the vehicle.

(Parking Lamps): Turn the control to this position to turn on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Headlamps): Turn the control to this position to turn on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

Wiper Activated Headlamps

This feature activates the headlamps and parking lamps after the windshield wipers have been in use for about six seconds. For this feature to work, the exterior lamp control must be in AUTO.

The wiper-activated headlamps immediately turn off, when the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF or the windshield wiper control is turned off.

Headlamps on Reminder

A warning chime will sound if the exterior lamp control is left on in either the headlamp or parking lamp position and the driver's door is opened with the ignition off. See *Lights On Reminder on page 3-46* for additional information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system will make the turn signal lamps come on when the following conditions are met:

- It is daylight and the ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
- The exterior lamp control is in the off or AUTO position and the headlamps are off.
- The automatic transmission is not in PARK (P).

When DRL are on, only the front turn signal lamps will be on. No other exterior lamps will be on. The instrument panel cluster will not be lit up either.

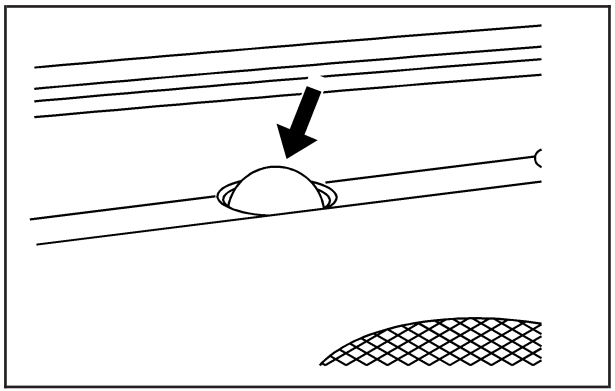
When the exterior lamp control is in AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the DRL will turn off and the low-beam headlamps will turn on. When it is bright enough outside, the low-beam headlamps will go off, and the DRL will turn back on. If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. Once you leave the garage, it takes about one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is light outside. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness lever is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-19*.

To drive the vehicle with the DRL off, turn the exterior lamp control off. Then turn on the fog lamps or parking lamps, and the DRL will turn off. This will work regardless of gear position and whether or not the parking brake is set.

As with any vehicle, the regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Light Sensor



The light sensor for the DRL and AUTO headlamp feature is located on top of the instrument panel. If you cover the sensor, it will prevent it from sensing light, and the exterior lamps may come on whenever the ignition is on.

Fog Lamps

Use the fog lamps for better vision in foggy or misty conditions.

The fog lamp controls are located on the turn signal/multifunction lever.

(Fog Lamps): The band with this symbol is used to turn the fog lamps on and off.

The parking lamps must be on for the fog lamps to work.

To turn the fog lamps on, turn the fog lamp band on the lever up to the dot and release it. The band will return to its original position.

To turn the fog lamps off, turn the fog lamp band up to the dot and release it. The band will return to its original position, and the fog lamps will turn off. If the high-beam headlamps are turned on, the fog lamps will also turn off. They will turn back on again when you switch back to low-beam headlamps.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

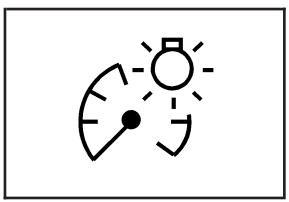
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF, if the parking lamps or headlamps have been left on. This protects against draining the battery. The battery saver does not work if the headlamps are turned on after the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, turn the lamps back on with the exterior lamp control.

Instrument Panel Brightness



Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the interior lights.

To turn on the dome lamps, turn the knob completely clockwise as far as it will go. The dome lamps stay on until they are turned off.

Entry Lighting

The entry lighting system turns on the reading and dome lamps and the backlighting to the exterior lamp control, when a door is opened or if the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter unlock button is pressed. If activated by the RKE, the lighting stays on for about 25 seconds. The entry lighting system uses the light sensor on the instrument panel; so it must be dark outside in order for the lamps to turn on. The lamps turn off about 25 seconds after the last door is closed. They dim then turn off if the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN. They immediately turn off if the power locks are used.

Parade Dimming

This feature does not let the instrument panel backlight dim during daylight hours while the key is in the ignition and the headlamps are on. Parade dimming automatically works with the light sensor, located on top of the dashboard. If it is dark enough outside and the parking lamps are on, the backlight on the instrument panel can be adjusted by turning the instrument panel brightness knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the lighting. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-19*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reading Lamps

The reading lamps are located on the overhead console. These lamps come on automatically when any door is opened.

For manual operation, press the button next to each lamp to turn it on or off.

If the reading lamps are left on, they automatically shut off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.

Electric Power Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly put the charge back in. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gage or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following loads are on: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message might be displayed, such as Battery Saver Active or Service Battery Charging System. If this message is displayed, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessory Power Outlet(s)

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment such as a cellular telephone, CB radio, etc.

The vehicle has one outlet in front of the center console on the instrument panel and one in the rear compartment. Your vehicle may have one or two outlets in the rear of the center console.

There is a small cap that must be removed to access the accessory power outlet. When not using the outlet be sure to cover it with the protective cap.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Power is always supplied to the outlets. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.**

Certain accessory power plugs may not be compatible to the accessory power outlet and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer for additional information on the accessory power outlets.

Notice: **Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle may damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not use equipment exceeding maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding electrical equipment.**

Follow the proper installation instructions that are included with any electrical equipment you install.

Notice: **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter

Your vehicle may have an ashtray and cigarette lighter.

Notice: **If you put papers, pins, or other flammable items in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage your vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ashtray

The ashtray is located under the climate control panel on the instrument panel. Press on the door to release the ashtray.

To empty the ashtray, remove it from the instrument panel by gripping the edges and pulling straight out. To reinstall, push the tray back into place.

There may also be ashtrays in the rear doors.

Cigarette Lighter

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

The cigarette lighter is located next to the ashtray. The vehicle does not have any cigarette lighters for the rear seat passengers.

To activate the cigarette lighter, push it into the heating element and let go. When the lighter is ready it will pop back out by itself.

Analog Clock

The analog clock is located on the instrument panel above the radio. The clock is not connected with any other vehicle system and runs by itself. To adjust the clock:

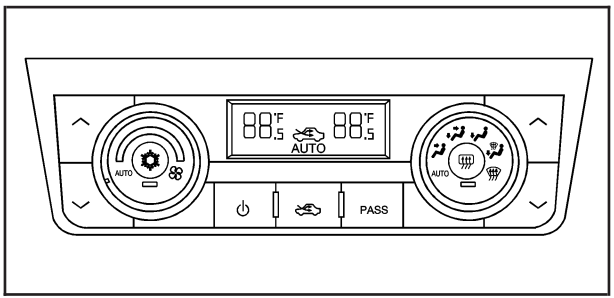
1. Locate the adjustment button directly below the clock face.
2. Push and hold the adjustment button to advance the clock hands. Holding the button down will cause the clock to advance faster. Release the button *before* you get to the desired time.
3. Push and release the button to increase the time by one minute increments until the desired time is reached.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Climate Controls

Dual Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, defrosting, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



Dual Climate Control System

Automatic Operation

The climate control system automatically adjusts the air temperature, air delivery mode, fan speed, and air conditioning for best comfort in the vehicle. To activate the automatic system:

AUTO (Automatic Mode):

1. Turn the fan and mode controls to the AUTO position. This also sets the recirculation mode to automatic operation on the display.
2. Press the up or down arrows to adjust the temperature to a comfortable setting between 70°F (21°C) and 80°F (27°C).
3. Allow the system time to stabilize. This might take several minutes in very hot or cold weather. Then adjust the temperature, as needed for best comfort.

   Choosing the coldest or warmest temperature setting will not cause the system to heat or cool any faster. In cold weather, the system starts at reduced fan speeds to avoid blowing cold air into the vehicle until warmer air is available. The automatic system starts out blowing air at the floor, but changes modes automatically as the vehicle warms up to maintain the chosen temperature setting. The length of time needed to warm the interior depends on the outside temperature and the amount of time that has passed since the vehicle was last driven.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

∧ ∨ **(Driver's Temperature Controls):** Press the up or down buttons closest to the driver to manually increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle.

∧ ∨ **(Passenger's Temperature Controls):** Press the up or down buttons closest to the passenger to manually increase or decrease the temperature for the front passenger. If the passenger's climate control system is off, pressing either of these buttons turns it on.

Manual Operation

(Fan): Turn the left control to adjust the fan speed manually if the automatic setting is higher or lower than desired. The fan speed remains at this level until you return to AUTO or adjust to a different level. In the automatic position, the blower might go to a lower speed during an OnStar® session to limit the background noise.

To change the current mode, select one of the following positions using the right control:

AUTO: Turn the control to this position to turn on the automatic delivery mode operation.

(Vent): Turn the control to this position so that air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Turn the control to this position so that the air is directed to the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets. The temperature of the air to the floor will be warmer than the air to the upper outlets.

(Floor): Turn the control to this position so that most of the air is directed to the floor outlets with some air directed to the outboard outlets, side window outlets, and defroster outlet.

(Defog): Turn the control to this position so that air is directed between the windshield and floor outlets, with some air going to the outboard outlets and side window outlets. More information of defogging can be found later in this section.

(Defrost): Turn the control to this position so that most of the air is directed to the windshield with some air going to the side window outlets. More information on defrosting can be found later in this section.

(On/Off): Press this button to turn the climate control system on or off. While off, adjusting any button or control, except recirculation and rear window defog turns the system back on. The air inlets default to outside air when the climate control system is turned off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

PASS (Passenger's Climate Control): Press this button to turn the passenger's climate control system on or off. Then press the up or down buttons to choose the desired setting. Pressing the button again automatically sets the passengers temperature to the drivers setting. Turning the passenger's temperature display off does not turn off the climate control system for the passenger.

Recirculation Operation

There are three options for bringing air into the climate control system. They are controlled by pressing the center button on the climate control panel. The climate control display indicates one of the following three modes:

(Auto Air Inlet): This mode lets the automatic climate control system choose the best air inlet position for cooling or warming the vehicle. To have full automatic climate control, the fan and mode controls must be set to the AUTO position. Generally, recirculation will only automatically be selected on hot days.

Your vehicle may have an optional Air Quality Sensor. To activate the air quality sensor, the auto air inlet setting must be used. For more information, see Air Quality Sensor found later in this section.

(Recirculation): This mode recirculates air inside the vehicle and keeps outside air from coming into the vehicle. It can be used to help cool the vehicle more quickly or to prevent odors from entering the vehicle.

Recirculation is not available in the defrost mode. It is also cancelled when floor or defog mode is selected. In some conditions using recirculation for long periods of time can cause the air inside the vehicle to become too dry or stuffy. To prevent this from happening, after the air in the vehicle has cooled, select auto air inlet or outside air.

(Outside Air): This mode pulls fresh air from outside the vehicle. Outside air is always selected in defrost mode to prevent fogging.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Quality Sensor: Your vehicle may have an air quality sensor to help limit the climate control system from pulling in irritating or harmful exhaust fumes from other vehicles. This sensor, when active, monitors the air quality in front of your vehicle and switches to air recirculation when poor quality air is detected outside your vehicle. The air quality sensor does not activate due to organic odors like skunk, and may not activate on many chemical-related odors. If you wish to limit these types of odors, manually select recirculation.

To activate the air quality sensor, if your vehicle has one, select the Auto Air Inlet on your climate control display. The word AUTO is shown in the center of the display under the outline shape of a vehicle. While the air quality sensor senses poor quality air, the recirculation graphic appears above the AUTO symbol.

Under some conditions, the air quality sensor system does not operate. In cold weather, the system might not be active (even if AUTO is displayed) because of concerns of fogging your windows, which may occur by activating recirculation mode. Also, the air quality sensor system does not remain in recirculation mode for extended periods of time that could cause stuffy or very dry conditions in the vehicle. Following a poorly running vehicle for an extended period of time may not keep recirculation active indefinitely.

The air quality sensor system does not protect against carbon monoxide (CO), which you cannot see or smell. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-39*.

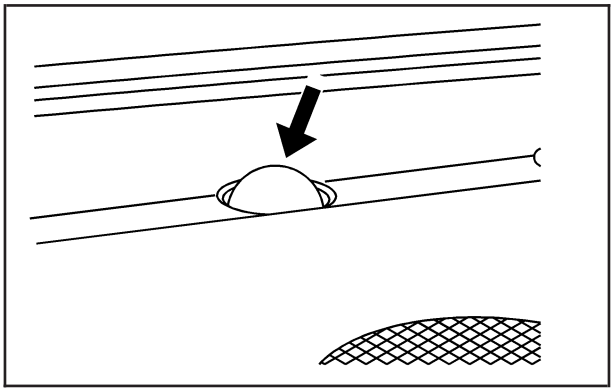
Air Conditioning

(Air Conditioning): Press this button to turn the air conditioning on or off, and override the automatic system. When selecting the AUTO fan or AUTO mode, the air conditioning compressor comes on automatically, as necessary.

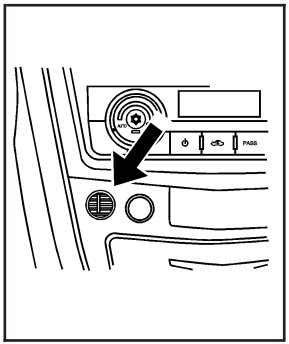
The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so water might drip underneath the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sensors



There is a solar sensor located on top of the instrument panel, near the windshield.



There is an interior temperature sensor located below the climate control system next to the steering wheel.

An ambient sensor is located behind the grille in front of the vehicle.

These sensors help the climate control system automatically control the temperature setting. The system can supply cooler air to the side of the vehicle facing the sun. The recirculation mode will also be used as needed to maintain cool outlet temperatures.

Do not cover any of the sensors or the climate control system might not work properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Defogging and Defrosting

Fog on the inside of windows is a result of high humidity (moisture) condensing on the cool window glass. This can be minimized if the climate control system is used properly. There are two modes to clear fog from the windshield.

(Floor/Defog): Use this mode to clear the windows of fog and warm the passengers. The system turns off recirculation and runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is at or below freezing. If recirculation mode is selected while using the defog mode, the system recirculates air initially but returns to the fresh air mode after 10 minutes.

(Defrost): Use this mode to remove fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. When selected, the system turns off recirculation and runs the air conditioning compressor, unless the outside temperature is at or below freezing.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog or frost from the rear window.

(Rear Defogger): Press the center of the right control to turn the rear window defogger on or off. Be sure to clear as much snow from the rear window as possible. The rear window defogger turns off about 20 minutes after the button is first pressed if the vehicle is moving at slower speeds. At higher vehicle speeds, the rear defogger can stay on continuously. Each additional press runs the defogger for about 10 minutes.

The heated outside rearview mirrors also heat to help clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror when the rear window defogger is on.

Notice: **Do not use a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window. Do not adhere anything to the defogger grid lines in the rear glass. These actions may damage the rear defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Outlet Adjustment

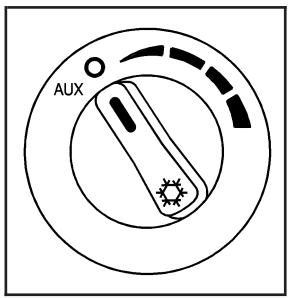
Use the knobs located in the center of each outlet to change the direction of the airflow. Use the thumbwheels to open or close the outlets.

Operation Tips

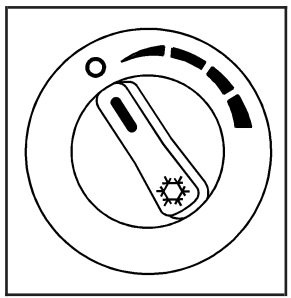
- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors may adversely affect the performance of the system.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of the vehicle more effectively.
- If the airflow seems low when the fan speed is at the highest setting, the passenger compartment air filter might need to be replaced. For more information, see *Passenger Compartment Air Filter on page 3-30*.
- Set the climate control system to AUTO fan and mode and then adjust the temperature setting up or down a few degrees for best comfort.

Rear Air Conditioning System

If your vehicle has the rear air conditioning system it has two fan speed selectors. One fan speed selector is located in the front overhead console and the other is located in the headliner above the second row seats. The rear air conditioning system is designed to provide cooled air only.



Front Control



Rear Control

To operate the rear system using the front control, just turn the knob to the fan position you want.

To use the rear control, first turn the front control to AUX, then the rear control can be used to increase and decrease the airflow.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

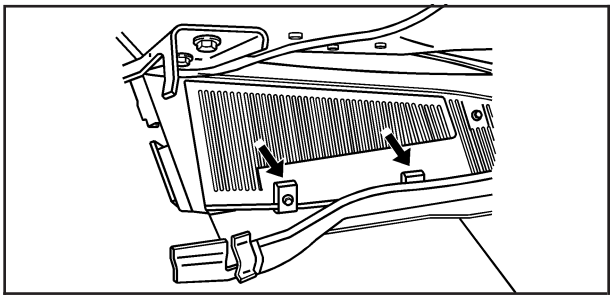
Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The passenger compartment air filter helps remove dust and pollen from the air entering the vehicle. Like the vehicle's engine air cleaner/filter, it needs to be changed periodically. For how often to change the passenger compartment air filter, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

The passenger compartment air filter is located underneath the hood below the windshield wiper arm on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

Use the procedure listed below to replace the passenger compartment air filter:

1. Open the hood to access the engine compartment. See *Hood Release on page 5-11* for more information. Locate the passenger compartment air filter access panel door.



2. Push the two tabs on the access panel door towards the windshield.
3. While pressing forward, lift the access panel out of the clipped position and pull towards the front of the vehicle. This releases the clips and allows the panel door to be removed.
4. Remove the old filter and insert a new one. Make sure the arrow on the filter is pointing toward the passenger compartment.

   See *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-14* for the correct part number for the filter.
5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to reinstall the cover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages that may be on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they are working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there is a problem with your vehicle.

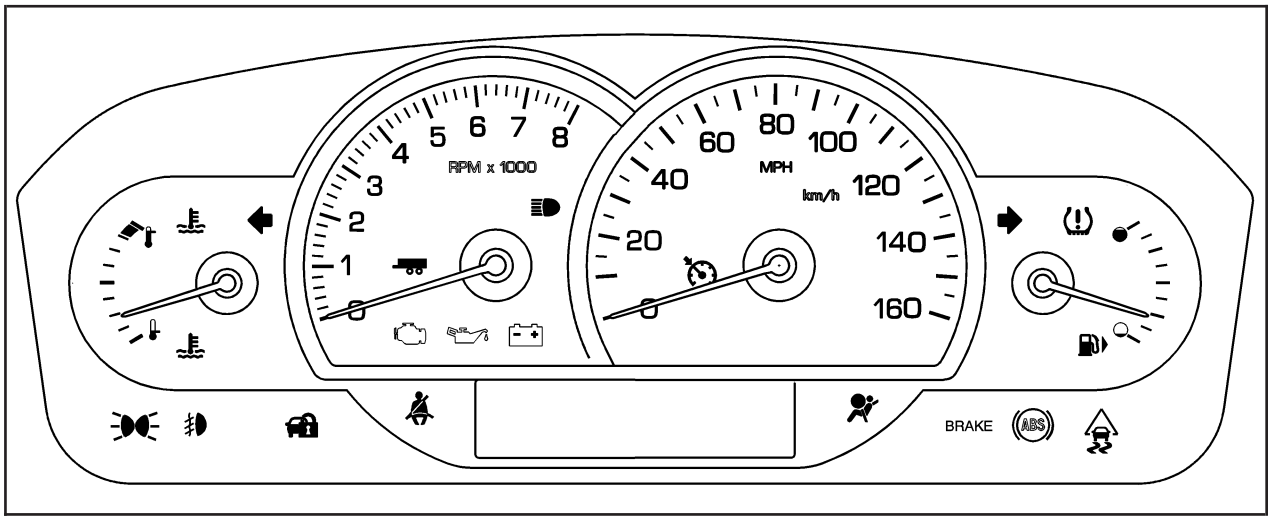
When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Waiting to do repairs can be costly – and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They are a big help.

Your vehicle also has a Driver Information Center (DIC) that works along with the warning lights and gages. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel Cluster

The instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You will know how fast you are going, how much fuel you are using and many of the other things you will need to know to drive safely and economically.



United States version shown, Canada similar

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Speedometer and Odometer

The speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h). See “SPEEDOMETER” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

The odometer mileage can be checked without the vehicle running. Your vehicle’s odometer works together with the driver information center. You can set a Trip A and a Trip B odometer. See “Trip Fuel” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

If your vehicle ever needs a new odometer installed, the new one will be set to the correct mileage total of the old odometer.

Tachometer

This gage indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Engine Speed Limiter

This feature prevents the engine from operating at too many revolutions per minute (rpm). When the engine’s rpms are too high, the throttle is closed to reduce speed. If this is not sufficient, then the fuel supply to the engine will be limited. When the rpms return to normal, the fuel supply will return to normal. This helps prevent damage to the engine.

Safety Belt Reminders

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime will come on for several seconds to remind people to fasten their safety belts, unless the driver’s safety belt is already buckled.

The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.

This chime and light is repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver’s belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

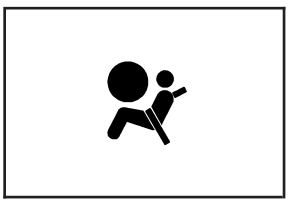
Several seconds after the engine is started, a chime will sound for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. This would only occur if the passenger airbag is enabled. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information. The passenger safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger's safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

Airbag Readiness Light

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 1-55*.



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. The light should go out and the system is ready.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your airbag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

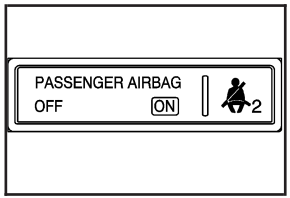
⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the airbag system may not be working properly. The airbags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle.

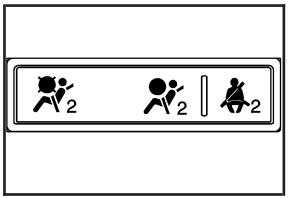
The airbag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when you start the engine. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately. If there is a problem with the airbag system, an airbag Driver Information Center (DIC) message may also come on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

Your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. Your instrument panel has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When you start the vehicle, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger's frontal airbag.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger's frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

⚠ CAUTION:

If the on indicator comes on when you have a rear-facing child restraint installed in the right front passenger's seat, it means that the passenger sensing system has not turned off the passenger's frontal airbag. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Do not use a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat if the airbag is turned on.

⚠ CAUTION:

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more on this, including important safety information.

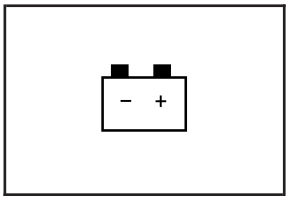
If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the airbag(s). See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more on this, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



This light will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition, but the engine is not running, as a check to show you it is working.

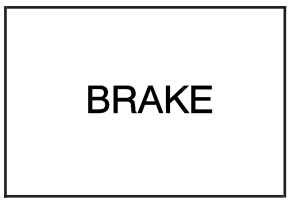
It should go out once the engine is running. If it stays on, or comes on while you are driving, you may have a problem with the charging system. A charging system Driver Information Center (DIC) message may also appear. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information. This light could indicate that you have problems with a generator drive belt, or another electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If you must drive a short distance with the light on, be certain to turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

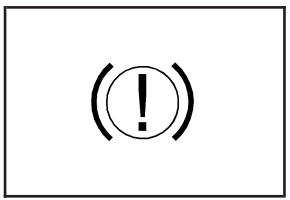
Brake System Warning Light

Your vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part is not working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.



United States



Canada

This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON/RUN. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will also come on when you set your parking brake. The light will stay on if your parking brake does not release fully. If it stays on after your parking brake is fully released, it means you have a brake problem.

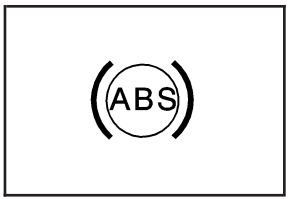
If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push, or the pedal may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-39*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you have pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Antilock Brake System Warning Light



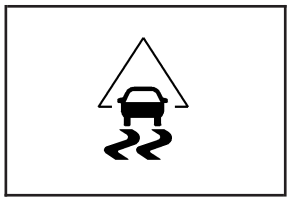
For vehicles with the Antilock Brake System (ABS), this light will come on briefly when you start the engine.

That is normal. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off, if the light comes on when you are driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light still stays on, or comes on again while you are driving, your vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, you still have brakes, but you do not have antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, you do not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with your regular brakes.
See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38*

For vehicles with a Driver Information Center (DIC), see *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for all brake related DIC messages.

Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light



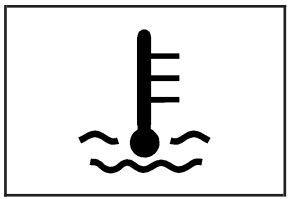
Your vehicle has a traction control system warning light.

This light will come on when your traction control system is limiting wheel spin. You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

If the traction control system warning light comes on and stays on for an extended period of time when the system is turned on, your vehicle needs service. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



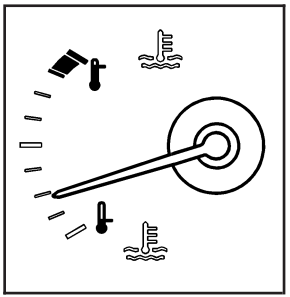
The engine coolant temperature warning light will come on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens you should pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26* for more information.

Notice: **Driving with the engine coolant temperature warning light on could cause your vehicle to overheat. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26*. Your vehicle could be damaged, and it might not be covered by your warranty. Never drive with the engine coolant temperature warning light on.**

This light will also come on briefly when starting your vehicle. If it does not, have your vehicle serviced.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage

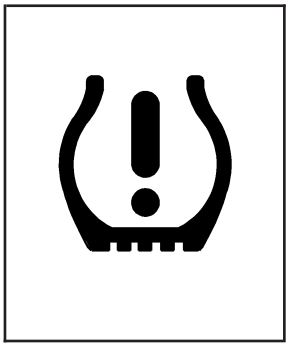


This gage shows the engine coolant temperature.

It indicates when the engine has warmed up and if the cooling system is operating properly. If the gage pointer moves into the shaded area, the engine coolant is too hot and the engine coolant temperature warning light will come on. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Pressure Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

This light will also come on when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated.

A tire pressure message in the Driver Information Center (DIC), may accompany the light. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

Stop and check your tires as soon as it is safe to do so. If underinflated, inflate to the proper pressure. See *Tires on page 5-51* for more information.

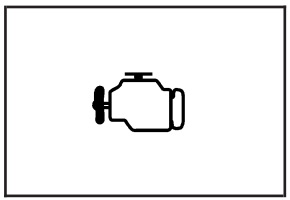
If a problem is detected with the Tire Pressure Monitor System, this light will flash for approximately 60 seconds and then stay on solid for the remainder of the ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-61* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine Light

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It makes sure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.



The check engine light comes on to indicate that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This can prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after a while, the emission controls might not work as well, your vehicle's fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by your warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.**

This light comes on, as a check to show it is working, when the ignition is turned ON/RUN but the engine is not running. If the light does not come on, have it repaired. This light also comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the Light is Flashing

The following can prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the ignition off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

If the Light Is On Steady

You might be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-8*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your vehicle’s electrical system might be wet. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You might notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration — these conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up. This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, your dealer/retailer can check the vehicle. Your dealer/retailer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

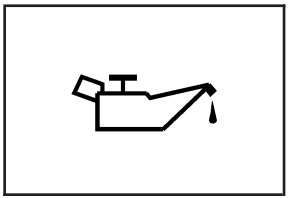
Some state/provincial and local governments have or might begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on or not working properly.

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced the battery or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, your dealer/retailer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Oil Pressure Light



Your vehicle may have this feature.

If the vehicle has an oil problem, this light may stay on after the engine is started, or come on while you are driving.

This light indicates that oil is not going through the engine quickly enough to keep it lubricated. The engine could be low on oil or could have some other oil problem. Have it fixed right away.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The oil light could also come on in the following situations:

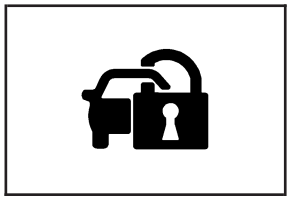
- The light will come on briefly when the ignition is turned on to show that it is working properly. If it does not come on with the ignition on, there may be a problem with the fuse or bulb. Have it fixed right away.
- Sometimes when the engine is idling at a stop, a chime will sound and the light may blink on and off. This is normal.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

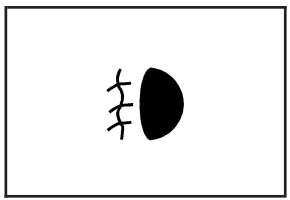
Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**

Security Light



For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Theft-Deterrent System on page 2-20*.

Fog Lamp Light

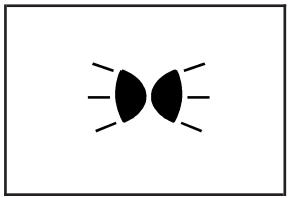


The fog lamp light will come on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light will go out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps on page 3-18* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

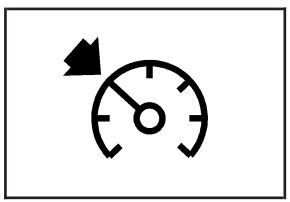
Lights On Reminder



This light comes on whenever the parking lamps are on.

See *Headlamps on Reminder on page 3-16* for more information.

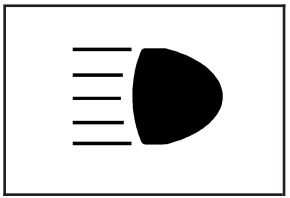
Cruise Control Light



This light comes on whenever you set the cruise control.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 3-12* for more information.

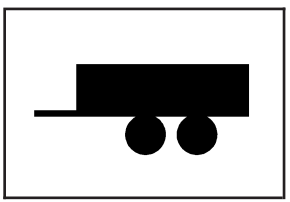
Highbeam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8* for more information.

Tow/Haul Mode Light

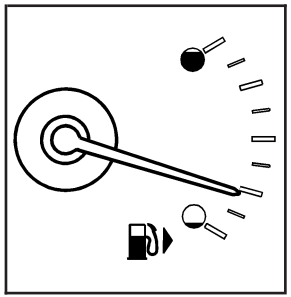


This light comes on when the Tow/Haul mode has been activated.

For more information, see *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-33*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel Gage



The fuel gage shows approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank. It works only when the engine is on.

If the fuel supply gets low, the FUEL LEVEL LOW message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) and a single chime will sound. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

All of the following situations are normal and do not indicate that anything is wrong with the fuel gage:

- At the gas station the gas pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- The gage may change when you turn, stop quickly or accelerate quickly.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill the tank than the gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated that the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The Driver Information Center (DIC) gives you the status of many of your vehicle's systems. The DIC is also used to display warning/status messages. All messages will appear in the DIC display located at the bottom of the instrument panel cluster, below the tachometer and speedometer. The DIC buttons are located on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering wheel.

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC will display the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

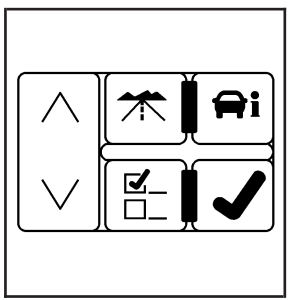
The top line of the DIC display shows the vehicle system information and the warning/status messages. The bottom line of the DIC display shows the odometer on the left side, the outside air temperature on the right side, and the shift position indicator in the center. For more information on the shift position indicator, see *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-30*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the sport mode is active, an S will appear next to the shift position indicator on the center of the DIC display. When the manual mode is active, an M will appear on the DIC display. When the normal mode is active, only the shift position indicator will appear. While the Driver Shift Control (DSC) feature is active, the DIC will change to show the selected gear. See “Driver Shift Control (DSC)” under *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-30* for more information.

If a problem is detected, a warning message will appear on the display. Be sure to take any message that appears on the display seriously and remember that clearing the message will only make the message disappear, not correct the problem.

DIC Operation and Displays



The Driver Information Center (DIC) has different displays which can be accessed by pressing the DIC buttons located on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering wheel.

Trip/Fuel: Press this button to scroll through the trip and fuel displays. See “Trip/Fuel Display Menu Items” following for more information on these displays.

Vehicle Information: Press this button to scroll through the vehicle information displays. See “Vehicle Information Display Menu Items” following for more information on these displays.

Customization: Press this button to scroll through each of the customization features. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-62* for more information on the customization features.

Set/Reset: Press this button to reset certain DIC features and to acknowledge DIC warning messages and clear them from the DIC display.

Menu Up/Down: Press this button to scroll up and down the menu items.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Trip/Fuel Display Menu Items

(Trip/Fuel): The following display menu items can be displayed by pressing the trip/fuel button:

TRIP A or TRIP B

These displays show the current distance traveled since the last reset for each trip odometer in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km). Both odometers can be used at the same time. Each trip odometer can be reset to zero separately by pressing and holding the set/reset button for a few seconds while the desired trip odometer is displayed.

FUEL RANGE

This display shows the approximate number of remaining miles (mi) or kilometers (km) you can drive without refilling the fuel tank. This estimate is based on the current driving conditions and will change if the driving conditions change. For example, if you are driving in traffic and making frequent stops, the display may read one number, but if you enter the freeway, the number may change even though you still have the same amount of fuel in the fuel tank. This is because different driving conditions produce different fuel economies. Generally, freeway driving produces better fuel economy than city driving.

Once the range drops below about 30 miles (48 km) remaining, the display will show FUEL RANGE LOW.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, the FUEL LEVEL LOW message will be displayed. See “FUEL LEVEL LOW” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

AVERAGE ECONOMY (AFE)

This display shows the approximate average miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of mpg (L/100 km) recorded since the last time this display was reset. To reset this display, press the set/reset button. The display will return to zero.

INST (Instantaneous) ECONOMY (IFE)

This display shows the current fuel economy in either miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number reflects only the fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and will change frequently as driving conditions change. Unlike average economy, this display cannot be reset.

FUEL USED

This display shows the number of gallons (gal) or liters (L) of fuel used since the last reset of this display. To reset this display, press the set/reset button. The display will return to zero.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIMER ON/OFF

This display can be used like a stopwatch. You can record the time it takes to travel from one point to another. To access the timer, press the trip/fuel button until 00:00:00 TIMER OFF displays.

To turn on the timer, press the set/reset button until TIMER ON displays. The timer will then start.

To turn off the timer, press the set/reset button again until TIMER OFF displays. The timer will stop and display the end timing value.

To reset the timer, press and hold the set/reset button after the timer has been stopped. The display will return to zero.

AVERAGE SPEED

This display shows the average speed of the vehicle in either miles per hour (mph) or kilometers per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this display. To reset this display, press the set/reset button. The display will return to zero.

BATTERY VOLTAGE

This display shows the current battery voltage. Your vehicle's charging system regulates voltage based on the state of the battery. The battery voltage may fluctuate when viewing this information on the DIC. This is normal.

If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the charging system light will illuminate and/or the DIC will display a message. See *Charging System Light on page 3-37*, *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* and *Electric Power Management on page 3-20* for more information.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Information Display Menu Items

(Vehicle Information): The following display menu items can be displayed by pressing the vehicle information button:

OIL LIFE REMAINING

If the vehicle has this display, it shows the estimated oil life remaining. If you see 99% OIL LIFE REMAINING on the display, that means that 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the oil life is depleted, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. You should change the oil as soon as possible. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* and *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.

Remember, you must reset the OIL LIFE yourself after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the OIL LIFE accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-19*. The display will show 100% when the system is reset.

UNITS

This display allows you to select between English or Metric units of measurement. Once in this display, press the set/reset button to select between ENGLISH or METRIC units.

PARKING ASSIST

If your vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, this display allows the system to be turned on or off. Once in this display, press the set/reset button to select between ON or OFF. If you choose ON, the system will be turned on. If you choose OFF, the system will be turned off. The URPA system automatically turns back on after each vehicle start. When the URPA system is turned off and the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P), the DIC will display the PARKING ASSIST OFF message as a reminder that the system has been turned off. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* and *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-45* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FRONT TIRES or REAR TIRES

The pressure for each tire can be viewed in the DIC. The tire pressure will be shown in either pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa). Press the vehicle information button until the DIC shows the tire pressure for the front tires. Press the vehicle information button again to view the pressure for the rear tires.

If a low or high tire pressure condition is detected by the system while driving, a message advising you to check the pressure in a specific tire will appear in the display. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

RELEARN REMOTE KEY

This display allows you to match Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters to your vehicle. To match an RKE transmitter to your vehicle:

1. Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN REMOTE KEY displays.
2. Press the set/reset button until REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE is displayed.
3. Press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the first transmitter at the same time for about 15 seconds.

   On vehicles with memory recall seats, the first transmitter learned will match driver 1 and the second will match driver 2.

   A chime will sound indicating that the transmitter is matched.
4. To match additional transmitters at this time, repeat Step 3.

   Each vehicle can have a maximum of eight transmitters matched to it.
5. To exit the programming mode, you must cycle the key to LOCK/OFF.

SPEEDOMETER

This display shows a digital speedometer in the DIC. The speed will be displayed in either miles per hour (mph) or kilometers per hour (km/h). Press the vehicle information button until the DIC shows the digital speedometer. To change the units from English to metric, see “UNITS” earlier in this section.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DIC Warnings and Messages

These messages appear if there is a problem detected in one of your vehicle's systems.

You must acknowledge a message to clear it from the screen for further use. To clear a message, press the set/reset button.

Be sure to take any message that appears on the screen seriously and remember that clearing the message only makes the message disappear, not the problem.

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL OFF

This message displays when the automatic headlamps are turned off.

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON

This message displays when the automatic headlamps are turned on.

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the system detects that the battery voltage is dropping below expected levels. The battery saver system starts reducing certain features of the vehicle that you may be able to notice. At the point that the features are disabled, this message is displayed. It means that the vehicle is trying to save the charge in the battery.

Turn off all unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

The normal battery voltage range is 11.5 to 15.5 volts. You can monitor battery voltage on the Driver Information Center (DIC) by pressing the trip/fuel button until BATTERY VOLTAGE is displayed.

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

When this message displays, it means that service is required for your vehicle. See your dealer/retailer. See *Engine Oil on page 5-16* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

When you reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message by clearing it from the display, you still must reset the engine oil life system separately. For more information on resetting the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-19*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECK TIRE PRESSURE

This message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires needs to be checked. This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate which tire needs to be checked. You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. To read the other messages that may have been sent at the same time, press the set/reset button. If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire Loading Information label. See *Tires on page 5-51*, *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*. If the tire pressure is low, the low tire pressure warning light comes on. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-41*.

CRUISE SET TO XXX MPH (km/h)

This message displays whenever the cruise control is set. See *Cruise Control on page 3-12* for more information.

DRIVER DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the driver door is not closed completely. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

ENGINE HOT – A/C (Air Conditioning) OFF

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-40*. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not increase the engine speed above normal idling speed. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26* for more information.**

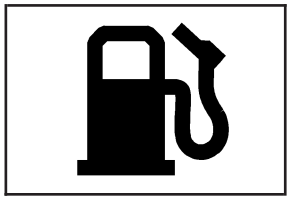
This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 3-40*.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

ENGINE POWER REDUCED

This message displays when the engine power is being reduced to protect the engine from damage. There could be several malfunctions that might cause this message. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

FUEL LEVEL LOW



This symbol appears with this message.

This message displays when your vehicle is low on fuel. Refill the fuel tank as soon as possible. A single chime sounds when this message is displayed. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-8*.

HOOD OPEN

This message displays when the hood is not closed completely. Make sure that the hood is closed completely.

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when the outside temperature is cold enough to create icy road conditions. Adjust your driving accordingly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

LEFT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the driver side rear door is not closed completely. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine oil pressure is low, severe engine damage may occur. If a low oil pressure warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the cause of the low oil pressure is corrected. See *Engine Oil on page 5-16* for more information.**

This message displays when the vehicle's engine oil pressure is low. The oil pressure light may also appear on the instrument panel cluster. See *Oil Pressure Light on page 3-44*.

A multiple chime sounds when this message is displayed. See *Engine Oil on page 5-16* for more information.

Stop the vehicle immediately, as engine damage can result from driving a vehicle with low oil pressure. Have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible when this message is displayed.

PARKING ASSIST OFF

If your vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, after the vehicle has been started, this message displays to remind the driver that the URPA system has been turned off. Press the set/reset button to acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display. To turn the URPA system back on, see "PARKING ASSIST" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48*. See *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-45* for more information.

PASSENGER DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the passenger side front door is not closed completely. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

REAR ACCESS OPEN

This message displays when the liftgate is not closed completely. Make sure that the liftgate is closed completely.

REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays while you are matching a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to your vehicle. See "Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* and *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced. To replace the battery, see “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.

RIGHT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the passenger side rear door is not closed completely. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

SERVICE AIR BAG

This message displays when there is a problem with the airbag system. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more information.

SERVICE A/C SYSTEM

This message displays when the air delivery mode door or the electronic sensors that control the air conditioning and heating systems are no longer working. Have the climate control system serviced by your dealer/retailer if you notice a drop in heating and air conditioning efficiency.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the generator and battery charging systems. Driving with this problem could drain the battery. Turn off all unnecessary accessories. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have the electrical system checked by your dealer/retailer. Under certain conditions, the charging system light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Charging System Light on page 3-37* for more information.

SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the brake system. The brake system warning light and the antilock brake system warning light may also display on the instrument panel cluster. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38* and *Antilock Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39* for more information. If this happens, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message displays or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service. See your dealer/retailer as soon as possible. See *Brakes on page 5-35* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM

This message displays, while the ignition is on, when the brake fluid level is low. The brake system warning light on the instrument panel cluster also comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38* for more information. Have the brake system serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

SERVICE PARKING ASSIST

If your vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, this message displays if there is a problem with the URPA system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 2-45* for more information. See your dealer/retailer for service.

SERVICE POWER STEERING

Your vehicle may have a speed variable assist steering system. See *Steering on page 4-8*.

This message displays if a problem is detected with the speed variable assist steering system. When this message is displayed, you may notice that the effort required to steer the vehicle decreases or feels lighter, but you will still be able to steer the vehicle.

SERVICE STABILITRAK

This message displays if there has been a problem detected with the StabiliTrak® system.

If this message comes on while you are driving, pull off the road as soon as possible and stop carefully. Try resetting the system by turning the ignition off then back on. If this message still stays on or comes back on again while you are driving, your vehicle needs service. Have the StabiliTrak® system inspected by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7* for more information.

SERVICE SUSPENSION SYS (System)

This message displays when the magnetic ride control or automatic leveling control system is not operating properly. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

SERVICE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the theft-deterrent system programmed in the key. A fault has been detected in the system which means that the system is disabled and it is not protecting the vehicle. The vehicle usually restarts; however, you may want to take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer before turning off the engine. See *PASS-Key® III+ Operation on page 2-22* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SERVICE TIRE MONITOR SYSTEM

This message displays if a part on the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-41*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-62* for more information. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer/retailer.

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). When this message displays, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See your dealer/retailer for service. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5* for more information.

SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays when there is a problem with the vehicle's transmission. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON

This message displays when a non-emissions related malfunction occurs. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX MPH (km/h)

This message displays when your vehicle speed is limited to 80 mph (128 km/h) because the vehicle detects a problem in the speed variable assist steering, magnetic ride control, or automatic leveling control systems. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

STABILITRAK NOT READY

This message may display and the Traction Control System and StabiliTrak® Warning Light on the instrument panel cluster may be on after first driving the vehicle and exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds. The StabiliTrak® system is not functional until the light has turned off. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STABILITRAK OFF

This message displays when you turn off StabiliTrak®, or when the stability control has been automatically disabled. To limit wheel spin and realize the full benefits of the stability enhancement system, you should normally leave StabiliTrak® on. However, you should turn StabiliTrak® off if your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow and you want to rock your vehicle to attempt to free it, or if you are driving in extreme off-road conditions and require more wheel spin. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-32*. To turn the StabiliTrak® system on or off, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7*.

There are several conditions that can cause this message to appear.

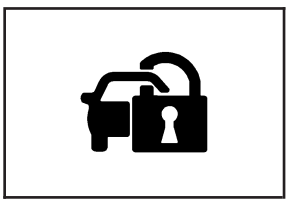
- One condition is overheating, which could occur if StabiliTrak® activates continuously for an extended period of time.
- The message also displays if the brake system warning light is on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38*.
- The message could display if the stability system takes longer than usual to complete its diagnostic checks due to driving conditions.
- The message displays if an engine or vehicle related problem has been detected and the vehicle needs service. See your dealer/retailer.

The message turns off as soon as the conditions that caused the message to be displayed are no longer present.

STARTING DISABLED SERVICE THROTTLE

This message displays when your vehicle's throttle system is not functioning properly. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

THEFT ATTEMPTED



This symbol appears with this message.

This message displays if the theft-deterrent system has detected a break-in attempt while you were away from your vehicle. See *Theft-Deterrent System on page 2-20* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TIGHTEN GAS CAP

This message displays when the fuel cap has not been fully tightened. Recheck the fuel cap to ensure that it is on and tightened properly.

TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays when the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) is re-learning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tire positions must be re-learned after rotating the tires or after replacing a tire or sensor. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66*, *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-61*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59* for more information.

TRACTION CONTROL OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5* for more information.

TRACTION CONTROL ON

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned on. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5* for more information.

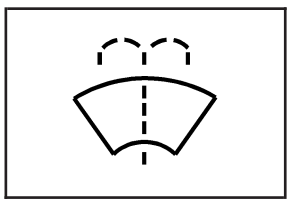
TRANSMISSION HOT IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the transmission fluid in your vehicle is too hot. Stop the vehicle and allow it to idle until the transmission cools down or until this message is removed.

TURN SIGNAL ON

This message displays as a reminder to turn off the turn signal if you drive your vehicle for more than about 1 mile (1.6 km) with a turn signal on. A multiple chime sounds when this message is displayed.

WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID



This symbol appears with this message.

This message displays when your vehicle is low on windshield washer fluid. Refill the windshield washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-34* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DIC Vehicle Customization

Your vehicle has customization capabilities that allow you to program certain features to one preferred setting. Customization features can only be programmed to one setting on the vehicle and cannot be programmed to a preferred setting for two different drivers.

All of the customization options may not be available on your vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on the DIC.

The customization features were set to the default settings when your vehicle left the factory, but they may have been changed from their default state since that time.

The customization preferences are automatically recalled.

To change customization preferences, use the following procedure.

Entering the Feature Settings Menu

1. Turn the ignition on and place the vehicle in PARK (P).

   To avoid excessive drain on the battery, it is recommended that the headlamps are turned off.

2. Press the customization button to enter the feature settings menu.

   If the menu is not available, FEATURE SETTINGS AVAILABLE IN PARK will display. Before entering the menu, make sure the vehicle is in PARK (P).

Feature Settings Menu Items

The following are customization features that allow you to program settings to the vehicle:

DISPLAY IN ENGLISH

This feature will only display if a language other than English has been set. This feature allows you to change the language in which the DIC messages appear back to English.

Press the customization button until the DISPLAY IN ENGLISH screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to select English as the language in which all DIC messages will appear.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DISPLAY LANGUAGE

This feature allows you to select the language in which the DIC messages will appear.

Press the customization button until the DISPLAY LANGUAGE screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

ENGLISH (default): All messages will appear in English.

DEUTSCH: All messages will appear in German.

FRANCAIS: All messages will appear in French.

ESPANOL: All messages will appear in Spanish.

JAPANESE: All messages will appear in Japanese.

ARABIC: All messages will appear in Arabic.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

AUTO DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select when the vehicle's doors will automatically lock. See *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-11* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

SHIFT OUT OF PARK (default): The vehicle's doors automatically lock when the doors are closed and the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P).

AT VEHICLE SPEED: The vehicle's doors automatically lock when the vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h) for three seconds.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTO DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select whether or not the door(s) will automatically unlock. It also allows you to select which doors and when they will automatically unlock. See *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-11* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: None of the doors will automatically unlock.

DRIVER AT KEY OUT: Only the driver's door will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

DRIVER IN PARK: Only the driver's door will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

ALL AT KEY OUT: All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

ALL IN PARK (default): All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when locking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: There will be no feedback when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ONLY: The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN ONLY: The horn will sound on the second press of the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN & LIGHTS (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter, and the horn will sound when the lock button is pressed again within five seconds of the previous command.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

LIGHTS OFF: The exterior lamps will not flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ON (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

DELAY DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select whether or not the locking of the vehicle's doors and liftgate will be delayed. When locking the doors and liftgate with the power door lock switch and a door or the liftgate is open, this feature will delay locking the doors and liftgate until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use. The key must be out of the ignition for this feature to work. You can temporarily override delayed locking by pressing the power door lock switch twice or the lock button on the RKE transmitter twice. See *Delayed Locking on page 2-11* for more information.

Press the customization button until DELAY DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: There will be no delayed locking of the vehicle's doors.

ON (default): The doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door or the liftgate is closed.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

EXIT LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select the amount of time you want the exterior lamps to remain on when it is dark enough outside. This happens after the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF.

Press the customization button until EXIT LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lamps will not turn on.

30 SECONDS (default): The exterior lamps will stay on for 30 seconds.

1 MINUTE: The exterior lamps will stay on for one minute.

2 MINUTES: The exterior lamps will stay on for two minutes.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

APPROACH LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select whether or not to have the exterior lights turn on briefly during low light periods after unlocking the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Press the customization button until APPROACH LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lights will not turn on when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

ON (default): If it is dark enough outside, the exterior lights will turn on briefly when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

The lights will remain on for 20 seconds or until the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed, or the vehicle is no longer off. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHIME VOLUME

This feature allows you to select the volume level of the chime.

Press the customization button until CHIME VOLUME appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

NORMAL: The chime volume will be set to a normal level.

LOUD: The chime volume will be set to a loud level.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

There is no default for chime volume. The volume will stay at the last known setting.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

PARK TILT MIRRORS

If your vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select whether or not the outside mirror(s) will automatically tilt down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R). See *Park Tilt Mirrors on page 2-44* for more information.

Press the customization button until PARK TILT MIRRORS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): Neither outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

DRIVER MIRROR: The driver's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

PASSENGER MIRROR: The passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

BOTH MIRRORS: The driver's and passenger's outside mirrors will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

EASY EXIT SEAT

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select your preference for the automatic easy exit seat feature. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 1-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT SEAT appears in the display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): No automatic seat exit recall will occur.

ON: The driver's seat will move back when the key is removed from the ignition.

The automatic easy exit seat movement will only occur one time after the key is removed from the ignition. If the automatic movement has already occurred, and you put the key back in the ignition and remove it again, the seat will stay in the original exit position, unless a memory recall took place prior to removing the key again.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

MEMORY SEAT RECALL

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select your preference for the remote memory seat recall feature. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 1-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until MEMORY SEAT RECALL appears in the display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): No remote memory seat recall will occur.

ON: The driver's seat and outside mirrors will automatically move to the stored driving position when the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed. If your vehicle has the adjustable throttle and brake pedal feature, the pedals will also automatically move. See "RELEARN REMOTE KEY" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* for more information on matching transmitters to driver ID numbers.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

REMOTE START

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to turn the remote start feature off or on. The remote start feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE START appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The remote start feature will be disabled.

ON (default): The remote start feature will be enabled.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

FACTORY SETTINGS

This feature allows you to set all of the customization features back to their factory default settings.

Press the customization button until FACTORY SETTINGS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

RESTORE ALL (default): The customization features will be set to their factory default settings.

DO NOT RESTORE: The customization features will not be set to their factory default settings.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Exiting the Feature Settings Menu

The feature settings menu will be exited when any of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P).
- The ignition is no longer in ON/RUN.
- The trip/fuel or vehicle information DIC buttons are pressed.
- The end of the feature settings menu is reached.
- A 40 second time period has elapsed with no selection made.

Audio System(s)

Determine which radio your vehicle has and then read the pages following to familiarize yourself with its features.

⚠ CAUTION:

This system provides you with far greater access to audio stations and song listings. Giving extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving can cause a crash and you or others can be injured or killed. Always keep your eyes on the road and your mind on the drive — avoid engaging in extended searching while driving.

Keeping your mind on the drive is important for safe driving. See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2*. Here are some ways in which you can help avoid distraction while driving.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

While your vehicle is parked:

- Familiarize yourself with all of its controls.
- Familiarize yourself with its operation.
- Set up your audio system by presetting your favorite radio stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers. Then, when driving conditions permit, you can tune to your favorite radio stations using the presets and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has them.

Notice: **Before adding any sound equipment to your vehicle, such as an audio system, CD player, CB radio, mobile telephone, or two-way radio, make sure that it can be added by checking with your dealer/retailer. Also, check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units. If sound equipment can be added, it is very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added.**

Your vehicle has a feature called Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-26* for more information.

Setting the Time

Radio with a Single CD or a Six-Disc CD Player

Your vehicle equipped with a Bose® sound system, has an analog clock as well as the digital radio clock. At the time of new vehicle delivery, the digital radio clock display should be disabled. If you decide to use the digital radio clock as well as the analog clock, you can change the setting to enable the radio clock display.

Enabling/Disabling the Digital Radio Clock

For the Single CD Player

Turn the radio clock display on or off by following these steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press the 🕘 (clock) button until the clock and date setting menus appear.
3. Press the pushbutton located under the forward arrow label until the menu for default clock and date settings appear.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Press the pushbutton located under the currently displayed status of either ON or OFF. The ON display indicates the radio clock display is disabled and the OFF display indicates the radio clock display is enabled. Press this pushbutton to toggle the radio clock display on or off.

   If the radio clock display is turned on, the screen displays Radio Clock ON for 10 seconds, then returns to the original clock display menu.

   If the radio clock display is turned off, the screen displays Radio Clock OFF for 10 seconds. The menus for clock and date settings are removed, and ON displays as a current status indicating that the clock display can be turned on, if desired.

The radio clock and analog clock are not synchronized. Occasionally you might need to set the digital radio clock using the procedure below to synchronize both clocks.

For a Six-Disc CD Player

Turn the radio clock display on or off by following these steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press the MENU button until the ◴ (clock) label option is displayed
3. Press the pushbutton located under the ◴ label until the clock and date settings appear.
4. Press the pushbutton located under the forward arrow label until the menu for default clock and date settings appear.
5. Press the pushbutton located under the currently displayed status of either ON or OFF. The ON display indicates the radio clock display is disabled and the OFF display indicates the radio clock display is enabled. Press this pushbutton to toggle the radio clock display on or off.

   If the radio clock display is turned on, the screen displays Radio Clock ON for 10 seconds, then returns to the original clock display menu.

   If the radio clock display is turned off, the screen displays Radio Clock OFF for 10 seconds. The menus for clock and date settings are removed, and ON displays as a current status indicating that the clock display can be turned on, if desired.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Time and Date

For the Single CD Player

This type of radio has a (clock) button for setting the time and date. To set the time and date, do the following:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press the button and HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year) displays.
3. Press the pushbutton located under any one of the labels that you want to change. Every time the pushbutton is pressed again, the time or the date if selected, increases by one.
   - Another way to increase the time or date, is to press the right SEEK arrow or the FWD (forward) button.
   - To decrease the time or date, press the left SEEK arrow or the REV (reverse) button. You can also turn the (tune) knob, located on the upper right side of the radio faceplate, to adjust the selected setting.

For a Six-Disc CD Player

This type of radio has a MENU button for setting the time and date. To set the time and date, do the following:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press the MENU button until the label option is displayed.
3. Press the pushbutton located under the label and the HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year) displays.
4. Press the pushbutton located under any one of the labels that you want to change. Every time the pushbutton is pressed again, the time or the date if selected, increases by one.
   - Another way to increase the time or date, is to press the right SEEK arrow or the FWD button.
   - To decrease the time or date, press the left SEEK arrow or the REV button. You can also turn the (tune) knob, located on the upper right side of the radio faceplate, to adjust the selected setting.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the Time and Date Default Setting

For the Single CD Player

To change the time and date default setting, do the following:

1. Change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year, by pressing the ◴ (clock) button.
2. Once the clock and date settings display along with the forward arrow, press the pushbutton located under the forward arrow until the time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
3. Press the pushbutton located under the desired option, then press the ◴ button again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

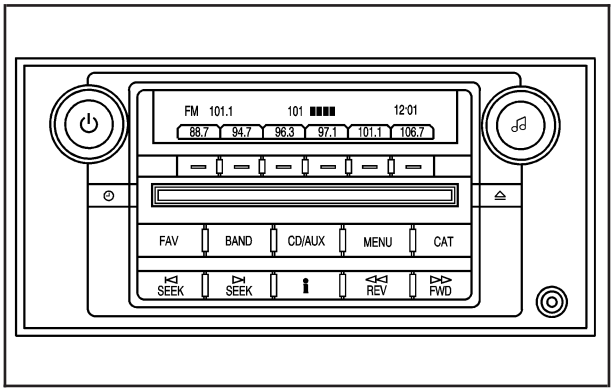
For the Six-Disc CD Player

To change the time and date default setting, do the following:

1. Change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year, by pressing the MENU button.
2. Once the ◴ (clock) label displays, press the pushbutton located under that label until the time and date settings display along with a forward arrow.
3. Press the pushbutton located under the forward arrow until the time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
4. Press the pushbutton located under the desired option, then press the MENU button again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio(s) (MP3)



Radio with CD shown,
Radio with Six-Disc CD similar

Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). The RDS feature is available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. While the radio is tuned to an FM-RDS station, the station name or call letters display. In rare cases, a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

Playing the Radio

(Power/Volume): Press to turn the system on and off.

Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume.

Speed Compensated Volume (SCV): Radios with Speed Compensated Volume (SCV) automatically adjusts radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise as driving speed changes. That way, the volume level should sound about the same as you drive. To activate SCV:

1. Set the radio volume to the desired level.
2. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
3. Press the pushbutton under the AUTO VOLUM (volume) label on the radio display.
4. Press the pushbutton under the desired Speed Compensated Volume setting (OFF, Low, Med (medium), or High) to select the level of radio volume compensation. The display times out after approximately 10 seconds. Each higher setting allows for more radio volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Finding a Station

BAND: Press to switch between AM, FM, or XM™ (if equipped). The display shows the selection.

(Tune): Turn to select radio stations.

SEEK : Press the arrows to go to the previous or to the next station and stay there.

To scan stations, press and hold either arrow for three seconds until a beep sounds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press either arrow again to stop scanning.

The radio only seeks and scan stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

(Information) (XM™ Satellite Radio Service, MP3/WMA, and RDS Features): Press to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS or XM™ station (if equipped), or MP3/WMA song. A choice of additional information such as: Channel, Song, Artist, CAT (category) can appear. Continue pressing this button to highlight the desired label, or press the pushbutton positioned under any one of the labels and the information about that label displays.

When information is not available, No Info displays.

Storing a Radio Station as a Favorite

Drivers are encouraged to set up their radio station favorites while the vehicle is stopped. Tune to your favorite stations using the presets, favorites button, and steering wheel controls, if your vehicle has this feature. See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2*.

FAV (Favorites): A maximum of 36 stations can be programmed as favorites using the six pushbuttons positioned below the radio station frequency labels and by using the radio favorites page button (FAV button). Press the FAV button to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM™ (if equipped) stations. To store a station as a favorite, perform the following steps:

1. Tune to the desired radio station.
2. Press the FAV button to display the page where you want the station stored.
3. Press and hold one of the six pushbuttons until a beep sounds. When that pushbutton is pressed and released, the station that was set, returns.
4. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton radio station you want stored as a favorite.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The number of favorites pages can be setup using the MENU button. To setup the number of favorites pages, perform the following steps:

1. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the pushbutton located below the FAV 1-6 label.
3. Select the desired number of favorites pages by pressing the pushbutton located below the displayed page numbers.
4. Press the FAV button, or let the menu time out, to return to the original main radio screen showing the radio station frequency labels and to begin the process of programming your favorites for the chosen amount of numbered pages.

Setting the Tone (Bass/Midrange/Treble)

BASS/MID/TREB (Bass, Midrange, or Treble):

To adjust bass, midrange, or treble, press the knob until the tone control labels display. Continue pressing to highlight the desired label, or press the pushbutton positioned under the desired label. Turn this knob clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the highlighted setting. The highlighted setting can also be adjusted by pressing either SEEK arrow, FWD (forward), or REV (reverse) button until the desired levels are obtained. If a station's frequency is weak, or if there is static, decrease the treble.

To quickly adjust bass, midrange, or treble to the middle position, press the knob for more than two seconds. A beep sounds and the level adjusts to the middle position. Pressing this knob for more than two seconds also centers the fade and balance settings to the factory default positions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Finding a Category (CAT) Station

CAT (Category): The CAT button is used to find XM™ (if equipped) stations when the radio is in the XM™ mode. To find XM™ (if equipped) channels within a desired category, perform the following:

1. Press the BAND button until the XM™ (if equipped) frequency displays. Press the CAT button to display the category labels on the radio display. Continue pressing the CAT button until the desired category name displays.
2. Press either of the two buttons below the desired category label to immediately tune to the first XM™ (if equipped) station associated with that category.
3. Turn the knob, press the buttons below the right or left arrows displayed, or press either SEEK arrow to go to the previous or to the next XM™ (if equipped) station within the selected category.
4. To exit the category search mode, press the FAV button or BAND button to display your favorites again.

Undesired XM™ (if equipped) categories can be removed through the setup menu. To remove an undesired category, perform the following:

1. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the pushbutton located below the XM CAT label.
3. Turn the knob to display the category you want removed.
4. Press the pushbutton located under the Remove label until the category name along with the word Removed displays.
5. Repeat the steps to remove more categories.

Removed categories can be restored by pressing the pushbutton under the Add label when a removed category displays or by pressing the pushbutton under the Restore All label.

The radio does not let you remove or add categories while the vehicle is moving faster than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The CAT button also toggles between compressed and uncompressed audio when a mixed disc is present. See “Compressed Audio” later in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio Message

Locked: This message displays when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up the radio. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM™ Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast-to-coast, and in digital-quality sound. During your trial or when you subscribe, you will get unlimited access to XM™ Radio Online for when you are not in your vehicle. A service fee is required to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

Radio Messages for XM™ Only

See *XM Radio Messages on page 3-89* later in this section for further detail.

Playing a CD (Single CD Player)

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the CD should begin playing.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol displays on the CD. As each new track starts to play the track number displays.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a CD(s) (Six-Disc CD Player)

LOAD : Press to load CDs into the CD player. This CD player holds up to six CDs.

To insert one CD, do the following:

1. Press and release the button.
2. Wait for the message to insert the disc.
3. Load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

To insert multiple CDs, do the following:

1. Press and hold the button for five seconds. A beep sounds and Load All Discs displays.
2. Follow the displayed instruction on when to insert the discs. The CD player takes up to six CDs.
3. Press the button again to cancel loading more CDs.

If the ignition or radio is turned off, with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol appears on the CD. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

(Eject): Press to eject CD(s). To eject the CD that is currently playing, press and release this button. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays. Once the disc is ejected, Remove Disc displays. The CD can be removed. If the CD is not removed, after several seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player and begins playing.

For the Six-Disc CD player, press and hold this button for two seconds to eject all discs.

(Tune): Turn to select tracks on the CD currently playing.

SEEK : Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current track, if more than ten seconds have played. Press the right arrow to go to the next track. If either arrow is held or pressed multiple times, the player continues moving backward or forward through the CD.

REV (Fast Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within a track. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the track. The elapsed time of the track displays.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly within a track. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the track. The elapsed time of the track displays.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

RDM (Random): With the random setting, CD tracks can be played in random, rather than sequential order. This feature is not available in playlist mode. To use random:

1. To play tracks from the CD you are listening to in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label. The random icon displays.
2. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play. The random icon disappears from the display.

RDM (Random): For the Radio with Six-Disc CD player, the tracks can be listened to in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD or all CDs in the six-disc CD player. To use random:

- To play the tracks from the CD you are listening to in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Randomize Current Disc displays. Press the pushbutton again to turn off random play.
- To play tracks from all CDs loaded in a six-disc CD player in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Randomize All Discs displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.

i (Information): Press to switch the display between the track number, elapsed time of the track, and the time. When the ignition is off, press to display the time (if the clock display is enabled).

BAND: Press to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD icon and track number displays when a CD is in the player. Press again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device, such as a portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, No Aux Input Device displays.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Care of Your CDs

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality can be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. Handle them carefully. Store CD-R(s) in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD does not play properly or not at all. Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the surface of a CD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Care of Your CD Player

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

The use of CD lens cleaners for CDs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD player mechanism.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, or more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error displays, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

Playing an MP3/WMA CD-R or CD-RW Disc

Radios with the MP3 feature are capable of playing an MP3/WMA CD-R or CD-RW disc. For more information on how to play an MP3/WMA CD-R or CD-RW disc, see *Using an MP3 on page 3-84* later in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CD Messages

DISC ERROR: If an error message displays and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- The radio system does not support the playlist format, the compressed audio format, or the data file format.
- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There could have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label could be caught in the CD player.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer/retailer when reporting the problem.

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

Your radio system has an auxiliary input jack located on the lower right side of the faceplate. This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack. Connect an external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, or cassette tape player, etc. to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for audio listening.

Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in PARK (P). See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2* for more information on driver distraction.

To use a portable audio player, connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) cable to the radio's front auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, press the radio CD/AUX button to begin playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

⏻ **(Power/Volume):** Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume of the portable player. You might need to do additional volume adjustments from the portable device if the volume is not loud or soft enough.

BAND: Press to listen to the radio when a portable audio device is playing. The portable audio device continues playing, so you might want to stop it or power it off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD when a portable audio device is playing. Press again and the system begins playing audio from the connected portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, No Aux Input Device displays.

Using an MP3

MP3/WMA CD-R or CD-RW Disc

The radio plays MP3 and WMA files that were recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW disc. The files can be recorded with the following fixed bit rates: 32 kbps, 40 kbps, 56 kbps, 64 kbps, 80 kbps, 96 kbps, 112 kbps, 128 kbps, 160 kbps, 192 kbps, 224 kbps, 256 kbps, and 320 kbps or a variable bit rate. Song title, artist name, and album can display when files are recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.

Compressed Audio

The radio also plays discs that contain both uncompressed CD audio (.CDA files) and MP3/WMA files. By default the radio reads only the uncompressed audio and ignores the MP3/WMA files. Pressing the CAT (category) button toggles between compressed and uncompressed audio format.

MP3/WMA Format

If you burn your own MP3/WMA disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3/WMA files are recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3/WMA files on one disc.
- The CD player is able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, and 255 files.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Avoid subfolders. The system can support up to 8 subfolders deep, however, keep the total number of folders to a minimum in order to reduce the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback.
- Make sure playlists have a .m3u or .wpl extension (other file extensions might not work).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Minimize the length of the file, folder or playlist names. Long file, folder, or playlist names, or a combination of a large number of files and folders, or playlists can cause the player to be unable to play up to the maximum number of files, folders, playlists, or sessions. If you wish to play a large number of files, folders, playlists, or sessions, minimize the length of the file, folder, or playlist name. Long names also take up more space on the display, potentially getting cut off.
- Finalize the audio disc before you burn it. Trying to add music to an existing disc can cause the disc not to function in the player.

Playlists can be changed by using the < (previous) and > (next) folder buttons, the knob, or the SEEK arrows. An MP3/WMA CD-R or CD-RW that was recorded using no file folders can also be played. If a CD-R or CD-RW contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, and 255 files, the player lets you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum cannot be accessed.

Root Directory

The root directory of the CD-R or CD-RW is treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory displays as F1 ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders. However, playlists (Px) are always accessed before root folders or files.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files. The empty folder does not display.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files are located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions do not display on a CD that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

When the CD contains only playlists and compressed audio files, but no folders, all files are located under the root folder. The folder down and the folder up buttons search playlists (Px) first and then goes to the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Order of Play

Tracks recorded to the CD-R or CD-RW play in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
  - Playlists can be changed by pressing the < folder and folder > buttons, the knob, or the SEEK arrows.
- Play begins from the first track in the first folder and continues sequentially through all tracks in each folder. When the last track of the last folder has played, play continues from the first track of the first folder.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless the folder mode has been chosen as the default display. The new track name displays.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages are shortened. Parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename does not display.

Preprogrammed Playlists

Preprogrammed playlists that were created using WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed, however, they cannot be edited using the radio. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files. Playlists must have a file extension of PLS, M3U, or WPL.

Playlists can be changed by using the < folder and folder > buttons, the knob, or the SEEK arrows. Tracks cannot be changed. Songs are played sequentially; press the REV or FWD to reverse or advance through the currently playing song.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing an MP3/WMA

Insert a CD-R or CD-RW partway into the slot (Single CD Player), or press the load button and wait for the message to insert disc (Six-Disc CD Player), label side up. The player pulls it in, and the CD-R or CD-RW should begin playing.

(Eject): Press this button to eject CD-R(s) or CD-RW(s). To eject the CD-R or CD-RW that is currently playing, press and release this button. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays. Once the disc is ejected, Remove Disc displays. The CD-R or CD-RW can be removed. If it is not removed, after several seconds, the CD-R or CD-RW automatically pulls back into the player and begins playing.

For the Six-Disc CD player, press and hold this button for two seconds to eject all discs.

(Tune): Turn this knob to select MP3/WMA files on the CD-R currently playing.

SEEK : Press the left SEEK arrow to go to the start of the current MP3/WMA file, if more than ten seconds have played. Press the right SEEK arrow to go to the next MP3/WMA file. If either SEEK arrow is held or pressed multiple times, the player continues moving backward or forward through MP3/WMA files on the CD.

(Previous Folder): Press the pushbutton positioned under the Folder label to go to the first track in the previous folder.

(Next Folder): Press the pushbutton positioned under the Folder label to go to the first track in the next folder.

REV (Fast Reverse): Press and hold this button to reverse playback quickly within an MP3/WMA file. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release this button to resume playing the file. The elapsed time of the file displays.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold this button to advance playback quickly within an MP3/WMA file. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release this button to resume playing the file. The elapsed time of the file displays.

RDM (Random): With the random setting, MP3/WMA files on the CD-R can be played in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD-R/CD-RW or all discs in a six-disc CD player. To use random, do one of the following:

1. To play MP3/WMA files from the CD-R or CD-RW in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Random Current Disc displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. To play songs from all CDs loaded in a six-disc CD player in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Randomize All Discs displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.

(Music Navigator): Use the music navigator feature to play MP3/WMA files on the CD-R or CD-RW in order by artist or album. Press the pushbutton located below the music navigator label. The player scans the disc to sort the files by artist and album ID3 tag information. It may take several minutes to scan the disc depending on the number of MP3/WMA files recorded to the CD-R or CD-RW. The radio might begin playing while it is scanning the disc in the background. When the scan is finished, the CD-R or CD-RW begins playing again.

Once the disc has scanned, the player defaults to playing MP3/WMA files in order by artist. The current artist playing is shown on the second line of the display between the arrows. Once all songs by that artist have played, the player moves to the next artist in alphabetical order on the CD-R or CD-RW and begins playing MP3/WMA files by that artist. If you want to listen to MP3/WMA files by another artist, press the pushbutton located below either arrow button. The CD goes to the next or previous artist in alphabetical order. Continue pressing either button until the desired artist displays.

To change from playback by artist to playback by album, press the pushbutton located below the Sort By label. From the sort screen, push one of the buttons below the album button. Press the pushbutton below the Back label to return to the main music navigator screen. Now the album name displays on the second line between the arrows and songs from the current album begins to play. Once all songs from that album have played, the player moves to the next album in alphabetical order on the CD-R or CD-RW and begins playing MP3/WMA files from that album.

To exit music navigator mode, press the button below the Back label to return to normal MP3/WMA playback.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press this button to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD icon and a message showing disc and/or track number displays when a CD is in the player. Press this button again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device such as a portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, “No Aux Input Device Found” displays.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

XM Radio Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

XM Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

No XM Signal: The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.

Loading XM: The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

Channel Off Air: This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel.

Channel Unavail: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.

No Artist Info: No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Title Info: No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No CAT Info: No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Information: No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

CAT Not Found: There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.

XM TheftLocked: The XM™ receiver in the vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM™ receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message appears after having your vehicle serviced, check with your dealer/retailer.

XM Radio ID: If tuned to channel 0, this message can alternate with the XM™ Radio eight digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Check XM Receivr: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

XM Not Available: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Navigation/Radio System

Your vehicle may have a navigation radio system.

The navigation system has built-in features intended to minimize driver distraction. Technology alone, no matter how advanced, can never replace your own judgment. See the Navigation System manual for some tips to help you reduce distractions while driving.

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System

If your vehicle has a navigation radio system, it could have the Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. For more information on how to use the RSE system, see “Rear Seat Entertainment System” in the Navigation System manual.

Rear Seat Audio (RSA)

This feature lets rear seat passengers listen to and control any of the music sources: radio, CDs, DVDs, or other auxiliary sources. However, the rear seat passengers can only control the music sources the front seat passengers are not listening to (except on some radios where dual control is allowed). For example, rear seat passengers can control a CD and listen to it through the headphones, while the driver listens to the radio through the front speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones.

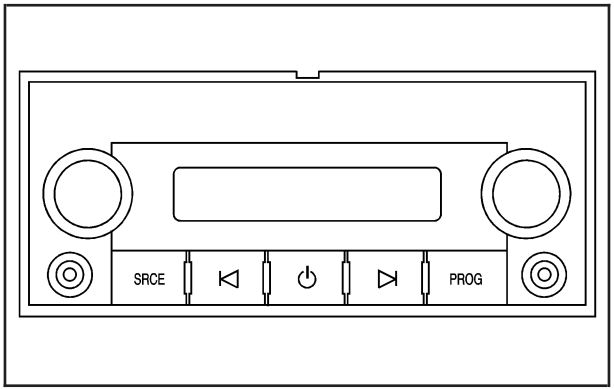
You can operate the Rear Seat Audio (RSA) functions even when the main radio is off. The front audio system will display the headphone icon when the RSA is on, and will disappear from the display when it is off.

Audio can be heard through wired headphones (not included) plugged into the jacks on the RSA. If your vehicle has this feature, audio can also be heard on Channel 2 of the wireless headphones.

Depending on the audio system, the rear speakers can continue to play even when the RSA audio is active through the headphones.

To listen to an iPod or portable audio device through the RSA, attach the iPod or portable audio device to the front auxiliary input (if available), located on the front audio system. Turn the iPod on, then choose the front auxiliary input with the RSA SRCE button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



(Power): Press this button to turn the RSA on or off.

Volume: Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume of the wired headphones. The left knob controls the left headphones and the right knob controls the right headphones.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the radio (AM/FM), XM™ (if equipped), CD, and if your vehicle has these features, DVD, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary.

(Seek): When listening to FM, AM, or XM™ (if equipped), press the seek arrows to go to the previous or to the next station or channels and stay there. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

Press and hold either seek arrow until the display flashes, to tune to an individual station. The display stops flashing after the buttons have not been pushed for more than two seconds. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

While listening to a CD, press the left seek arrow to go back to the start of the current track (if more than ten seconds have played) or press the right seek arrow to hear the next track on the CD. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

When a DVD video menu is being displayed, press either seek arrow to perform a cursor up or down on the menu. Hold the seek arrows to perform a cursor left or right on the menu.

PROG (Program): Press this button to go to the next preset radio station or channel set on the main radio. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When a CD or DVD audio disc is playing, press this button to go to the beginning of the CD or DVD audio. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the CD or DVD audio.

When a disc is playing in the CD or DVD changer, press this button to select the next disc, if multiple discs are loaded. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the disc.

When a DVD video menu is being displayed, press the PROG button to perform the menu function, enter.

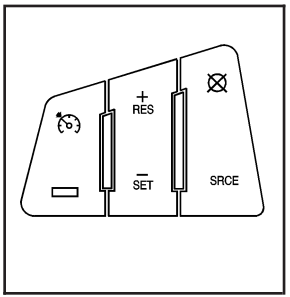
Theft-Deterrent Feature

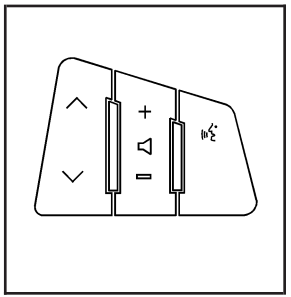
THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your vehicle's radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it does not operate and LOC, LOCK, or LOCKED could display.

With THEFTLOCK® activated, the radio does not operate if stolen.

Audio Steering Wheel Controls

Your vehicle has audio steering wheel controls, they could differ depending on your vehicle's options.





Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel. See the following descriptions of the controls that can adjusted.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the radio (AM, FM), XM™ (if equipped) and CD.

∧ ∨ **(Previous/Next):** Press the arrows to go to the previous or the next radio station stored as a favorite.

When a CD is playing, press either arrow to go to the previous or to the next track.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

+ – (Volume): Press the plus or minus volume button to increase or to decrease the radio volume.

(Mute/Voice Recognition): Press and release this button to silence the vehicle speakers only. The audio of the wireless and wired headphones, if your vehicle has these features, does not mute. Press and release this button again, to turn the sound on.

If your vehicle has the navigation system, press and hold this button for longer than one second to initiate voice recognition. See “Voice Recognition” in the Navigation System manual for more information.

If your vehicle has OnStar®, press and hold this button for longer than one second to interact with the OnStar® system. If your vehicle also has the navigation system, press and hold this button for longer than one second to initiate voice recognition and say “OnStar” to enter OnStar® mode. See the *OnStar® System on page 2-47* OnStar® System.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on your radio.

FM Stereo

FM stereo gives the best sound, but FM signals only reach about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to fade in and out.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or through tunnels could cause loss of the XM™ signal for a period of time. The radio may display NO XM SIGNAL to indicate interference.

Rear Side Window Antenna

Your AM-FM antenna is located in the passenger rear side windows. Make sure the inside surfaces of the rear side windows are not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surfaces are damaged, they could interfere with radio reception.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside of the rear side windows may affect radio reception or damage the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not clear the inside of the rear side windows with sharp objects.**

Notice: **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to your antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by your warranty.**

Because this antenna is built into the rear side windows, there is a reduced risk of damage caused by car washes and vandals.

If you choose to add an aftermarket cellular telephone to your vehicle, and the antenna needs to be attached to the glass, make sure you do not damage the grid lines for the AM-FM antennas or place the cellular telephone antenna over the grid lines.

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

If your vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM™ system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Loading items onto the roof of your vehicle can interfere with the performance of the XM™ system. Make sure the XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is not obstructed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle 4-2
- Defensive Driving 4-2
- Drunk Driving 4-2
- Control of a Vehicle 4-3
- Braking 4-3
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-4
- Braking in Emergencies 4-5
- Traction Control System (TCS) 4-5
- Magnetic Ride Control 4-6
- Limited-Slip Rear Axle 4-7
- StabiliTrak® System 4-7
- Panic Brake Assist 4-8
- All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System 4-8
- Steering 4-8
- Off-Road Recovery 4-10
- Passing 4-10
- Loss of Control 4-10
- Off-Road Driving 4-12
- Driving at Night 4-25
- Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads 4-26
- Before Leaving on a Long Trip 4-27
- Highway Hypnosis 4-27
- Hill and Mountain Roads 4-28
- Winter Driving 4-29
- If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 4-32
- Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out 4-33
- Loading Your Vehicle 4-33

Towing 4-39
- Towing Your Vehicle 4-39
- Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-39
- Level Control 4-40
- Towing a Trailer 4-41

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear your safety belt — See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-13*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- **Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.**
- **Focus on the task of driving.**

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Drunk Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control your vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of your vehicle. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7*.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That is perception time. Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

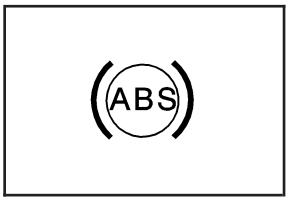
If your vehicle's engine ever stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If you do, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

Your vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start the engine and begin to drive away, ABS will check itself. You might hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on. This is normal.



If there is a problem with the ABS, this warning light will stay on. See *Antilock Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

ABS can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As you brake, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remember: ABS does not change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you will not have time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let antilock work for you. You might feel the brakes vibrate or notice some noise, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

With ABS, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

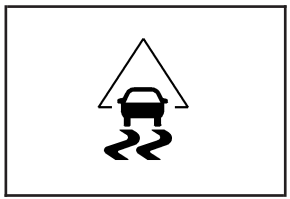
Traction Control System (TCS)

Your vehicle has a traction control system that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. On a rear-wheel-drive vehicle, the system operates if it senses that one or both of the rear wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction.

On an All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) vehicle, the system will operate if it senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system brakes the spinning wheel(s) and/or reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

The TCS warning light will also flash to indicate that the traction control system is active.



This warning light will come on to let you know if there is a problem with your traction control system.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light on page 3-39*. When this warning light is on, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.

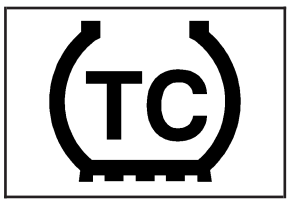
The TCS automatically comes on whenever you start your vehicle. To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave the system on. But you can turn the traction control system off if you ever need to.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when the TCS is off. You could damage your vehicle's driveline.**

When the TCS is switched off on AWD vehicles, you may still feel the system working. This is normal and necessary with the AWD hardware on your vehicle.

You should turn the system off if your vehicle ever gets stuck in sand, mud or snow and rocking the vehicle is required. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-33* and *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-32* for more information. See also *Winter Driving on page 4-29* for information on using TCS when driving in snowy or icy conditions.



To turn the system off, press the TC (traction control) button located on the console under the climate controls.

If you press the TC (traction control) button once, the traction control system will turn off and the traction control system warning light will come on. Press the TC button again to turn the system back on.

If you press and hold the TC button for five seconds, the StabiliTrak® system and the traction control system will turn off. Press the TC (traction control) button again to turn StabiliTrak® back on. For more information, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7*.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

Magnetic Ride Control

Your vehicle may have Magnetic Ride Control that automatically adjusts the ride of your vehicle. Automatic ride control is achieved through a computer used to control and monitor the suspension system. The controller receives input from various sensors to determine the proper system response. If the controller detects a problem within the system, the DIC will display a SERVICE SUSPENSION SYS message. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information. See your dealer for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Limited-Slip Rear Axle

Your vehicle may have this feature. A limited-slip rear axle can give you additional traction on snow, mud, ice, sand or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when one of the rear wheels has no traction and the other does, this feature will allow the wheel with traction to move the vehicle.

StabiliTrak® System

Your vehicle is equipped with a vehicle stability enhancement system called StabiliTrak®. It is an advanced computer controlled system that assists you with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

StabiliTrak® activates when the computer senses a discrepancy between your intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak® selectively applies braking pressure at any one of the vehicle's brakes to help steer the vehicle in the direction which you are steering.

When the stability control system activates, the traction control system and StabiliTrak® light will flash on the instrument panel cluster. This also occurs when traction control is activated.

You may also hear a noise or feel vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal. Continue to steer the vehicle in the direction you want it to go.

If there is a problem detected with StabiliTrak®, a SERVICE STABILITRAK message will be displayed on the Driver Information Center. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*. When this message is displayed, the system is not operational. Driving should be adjusted accordingly.

StabiliTrak® comes on automatically whenever you start your vehicle. To help assist you with directional control of the vehicle, you should always leave the system on. You can turn StabiliTrak® off if you ever need to through the TC (traction control) on/off button. A STABILITRAK OFF message will appear in the DIC when it has been turned off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5*.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the StabiliTrak® activates, the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may reengage the cruise control. See *Cruise Control on page 3-12* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Panic Brake Assist

Your vehicle has a panic brake assist system that monitors the intention of the driver while braking. If the system senses that the driver has applied hard/fast pressure to the brake pedal, the system will generate additional pressure, making it easier for the driver to maintain brake application. When this happens the brake pedal will feel easier to push. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let the system work for you. You may feel the brakes vibrate, or you may notice some noise but this is normal. The brakes will return to normal operation after the brake pedal has been released.

All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System

If your vehicle has this feature, engine power is sent to all four wheels all the time. This is like four-wheel drive, but it is fully automatic.

Steering

Power Steering

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the “driver lost control” accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here is why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there is no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you have ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you will understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you are in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you are steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems — steering and acceleration — have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7*.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you will want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while the front wheels are straight ahead.

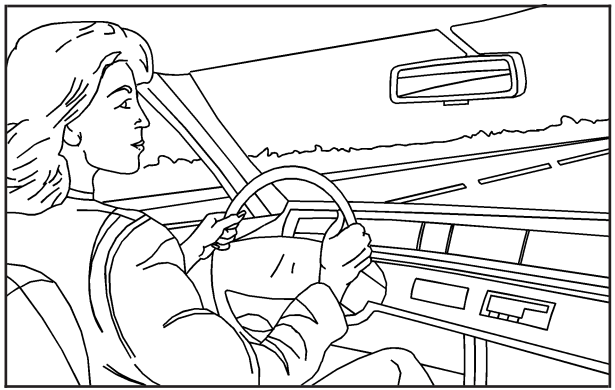
Try to adjust your speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot; there is not room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First, apply the brakes. See *Braking on page 4-3*. It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.



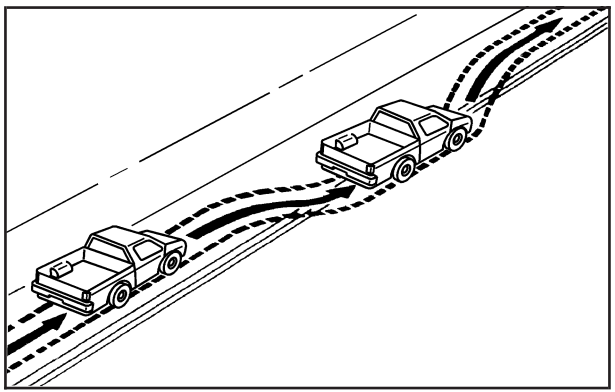
An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you are driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Passing

Passing another vehicle on a two-lane road can be dangerous. To reduce the risk of danger while passing, we suggest the following tips:

- Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect a successful pass. If in doubt, wait.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines that could indicate a turn or an intersection. Never cross a solid or double-solid line on your side of the lane.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass. Doing so can reduce your visibility.
- Wait your turn to pass a slow vehicle.
- When you are being passed, ease to the right.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Remember: Any traction control system helps avoid only the acceleration skid. If your traction control system is off, then an acceleration skid is also best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any Antilock Brake System (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-Road Driving

This off-road guide is for vehicles that have all-wheel drive. If your vehicle does not have all-wheel drive, you should not drive off-road unless you are on a level, solid surface.

Many of the same design features that help make your vehicle responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions — features like all-wheel drive — help make it much better suited for off-road use. Its higher ground clearance also helps your vehicle step over some off-road obstacles. But your vehicle does not have features like special underbody shielding and a transfer case low gear range, things that are usually thought necessary for extended or severe off-road service.

Also, see *Braking on page 4-3*.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain. As always, wear your safety belt.

Off-road driving can be great fun. But it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

"Off-roading" means you have left the North American road system behind. Traffic lanes are not marked. Curves are not banked. There are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill, or downhill. In short, you have gone right back to nature.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that is why it is very important that you read this guide. You will find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

Before You Go Off-Roading

There are some things to do before you go out. For example, be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Check to make sure all underbody shields, if the vehicle has them, are properly attached. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving? If you do not know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone's private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

- **Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.**
- **Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.**
- **Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.**

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of your rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain does not toss things around.

You will find other important information in this manual. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*, *Luggage Carrier on page 2-58* and *Tires on page 5-51*.

Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment — shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses — or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Always carry a litter bag — make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires where permitted, camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different driving skills. Here is what we mean.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet, and body, you will need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- You have less time to react.
- You have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- You will need more distance for braking, especially since you are on an unpaved surface.

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. You need to be familiar with the terrain and its many different features. Here are some things to consider.

Surface Conditions: Off-roading can take you over hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the steering, acceleration, and braking of your vehicle in different ways. Depending upon the kind of surface you are on, you may experience slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances.

Surface Obstacles: Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself. Here are some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill? There is more discussion of these subjects later.
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you are not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, the wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

In a way, off-road driving requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. You have to use your own good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road. And this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. See *Drunk Driving on page 4-2*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving on Off-Road Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and understanding of what your vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.

Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it is one of those hills that is just too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top.

On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Here are some other things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Uphill

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain your speed. Do not use more power than you need, because you do not want the wheels to start spinning or sliding.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.
- Ease up on your speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make you more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use your headlamps, even during the day. They make your vehicle more visible to oncoming traffic.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What should I do if my vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and I cannot make it up the hill?

A: If this happens, there are some things you should do, and there are some things you must not do. First, here is what you *should* do:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards. Also, apply the parking brake.
- If your engine is still running, shift the transmission to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in REVERSE (R).
- If your engine has stopped running, you will need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to PARK (P) and restart the engine. Then shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in REVERSE (R).
- As you are backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position. This way you will be able to tell if your wheels are straight and maneuver as you back down. It is best that you back down the hill with your wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Here are some things you *must not* do if you stall, or are about to stall, when going up a hill.

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into NEUTRAL (N) to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. Your vehicle will roll backwards very quickly and you could go out of control.

  Instead, apply the regular brake to stop the vehicle. Then apply the parking brake. Shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back straight down.
- Never attempt to turn around if you are about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall your vehicle, it is steep enough to cause you to roll over if you turn around. If you cannot make it up the hill, you must back straight down the hill.

Q: Suppose, after stalling, I try to back down the hill and decide I just cannot do it. What should I do?

A: Set the parking brake, put the transmission in PARK (P), and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, you will want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help the brakes and they will not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: Are there some things I should not do when driving down a hill?

A: Yes! These are important because, if you ignore them, you could lose control and have a serious accident.

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down may be too steep to drive across. You could roll over if you do not drive straight down.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N). This is called “free wheeling.” The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

Q: Am I likely to stall when going downhill?

A: It is much more likely to happen going uphill. But if it happens going downhill, here is what to do.

1. Stop your vehicle by applying the regular brakes. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to PARK (P) and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Across an Incline

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when you drive across an incline, the much more narrow track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause your tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even more.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

Q: What if I am driving across an incline that is not too steep, but I hit some loose gravel and start to slide downhill. What should I do?

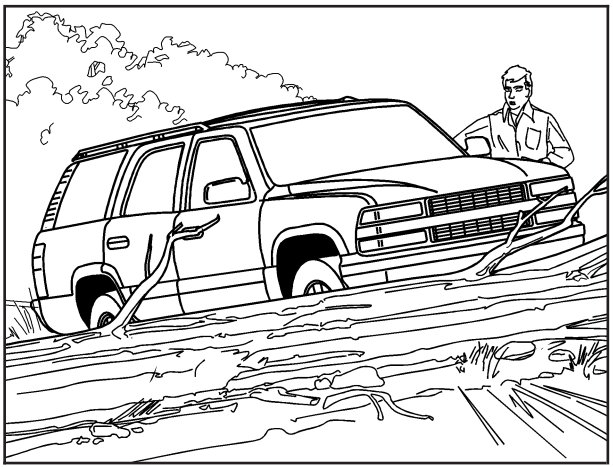
A: If you feel your vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. However, a much better way to prevent this is to get out and “walk the course” so you know what the surface is like before you drive it.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Stalling on an Incline

⚠ CAUTION:

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.



If your vehicle stalls when you are crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, the wheels will not get good traction. You cannot accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you will need longer braking distances.

It is best to use a low gear when you are in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you do not get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you will sense a change in wheel traction. But it will depend upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, the tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And, if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving in Water

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it is deep enough to cover your wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe, do not try it — you probably will not get through. Also, water that deep can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on your vehicle's ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. And, as long as the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When you go through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads on page 4-26* for more information on driving through water.

After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage. Also, check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Your vehicle will require more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving because some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Night driving tips include:

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Reduce headlamp glare by adjusting the inside rearview mirror.
- Slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles because your headlamps can only light up so much road ahead.
- Watch for animals.
- When tired, pull off the road.
- Do not wear sunglasses.
- Avoid staring directly into approaching headlamps.
- Keep the windshield and all glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out.
- Keep your eyes moving, especially during turns or curves.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But, as we get older, these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver might need at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause accidents. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause your vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under your vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-51*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

To prepare your vehicle for a long trip, consider having it serviced by your dealer/retailer before departing.

Things to check on your own include:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Reservoir full? Windows clean — inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* In good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* All levels checked?
- *Lamps:* Do they all work and are lenses clean?
- *Tires:* Are treads good? Are tires inflated to recommended pressure?
- *Weather and Maps:* Safe to travel? Have up-to-date maps?

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park your vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep your vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Going down steep or long hills, shift to a lower gear.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

See *Off-Road Driving on page 4-12* for information about driving off-road.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Winter Driving

Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You might want to put winter emergency supplies in your vehicle.

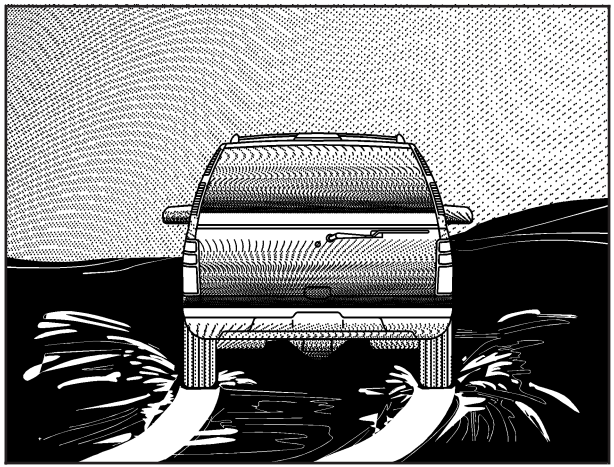
Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth, and a couple of reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet, or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

Also see *Tires on page 5-51*.

Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where the tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You have a lot less traction, or grip, and need to be very careful.



What is the worst time for this? Wet ice. Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it can offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it is about freezing, 32°F (0°C), and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing, or loose snow — drive with caution.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accelerate gently. Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7* and *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-33*. Also see "Winter Tires" under *Tires on page 5-51*.

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have ABS, begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-4*.

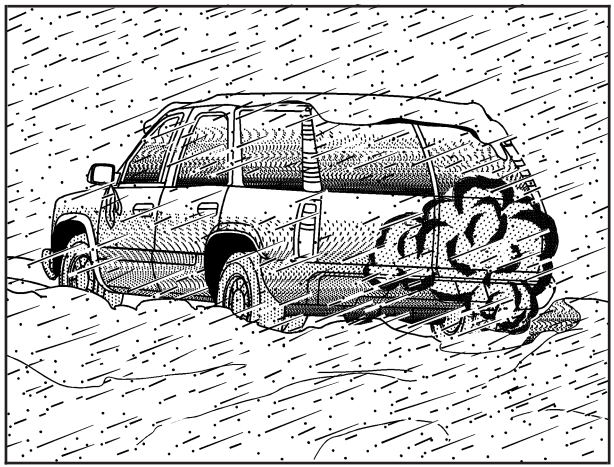
- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that is covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches can appear in shaded areas where the sun cannot reach, such as around clumps of trees, behind buildings, or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you are actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

If You Are Caught in a Blizzard

If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you have been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you do not have blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with the headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free your vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-33*.

If your vehicle has a traction system, it can often help to free a stuck vehicle. Refer to your vehicle's traction system in the Index. If the stuck condition is too severe for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-74*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

First, turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction or stability system. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-5* and *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-7*. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. By slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that could free your vehicle. If that does not get your vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. Or, you can use a recovery hook, if your vehicle has them. If your vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-39*.

Loading Your Vehicle

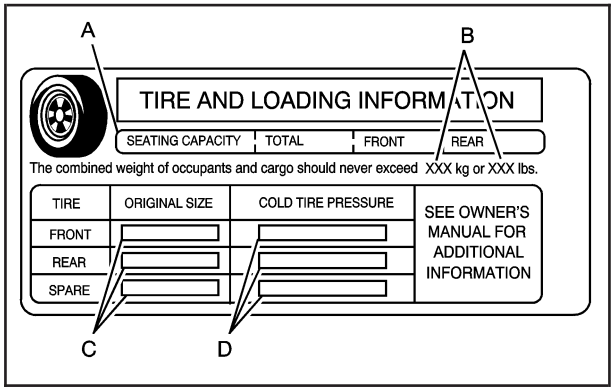
It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 5-51* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*.

There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See "Certification/Tire Label" later in this section.

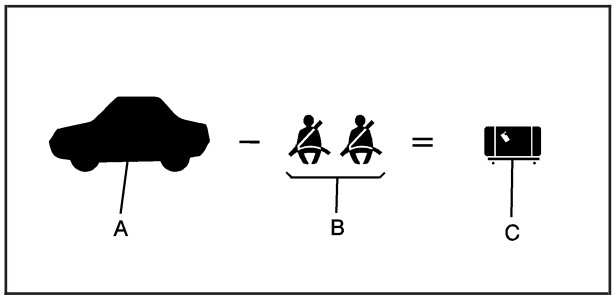
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

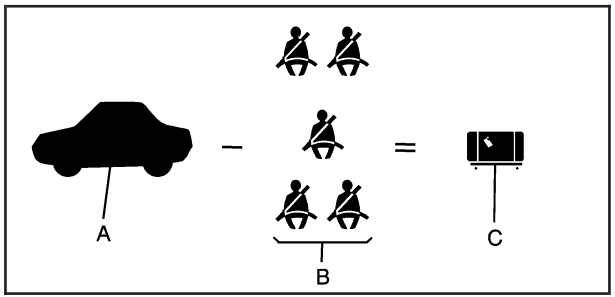
   If your vehicle can tow a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-41* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.



Example 1

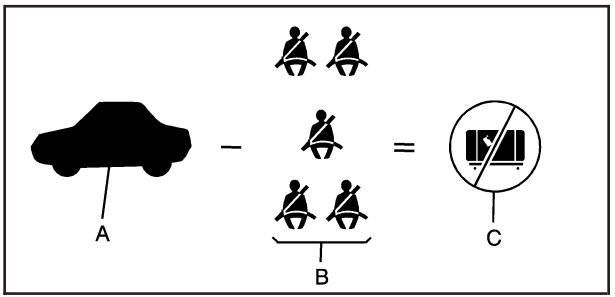
Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Example 2

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (340 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)



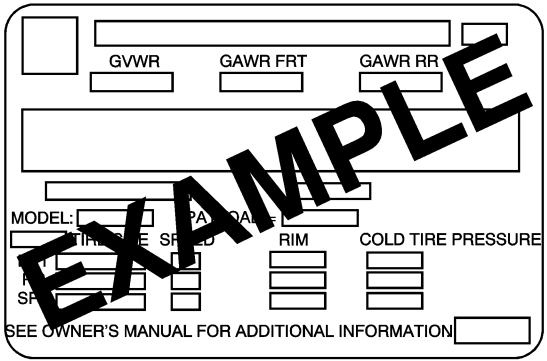
Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Certification/Tire Label



United States version shown, Canada similar

A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is attached to either the driver's door edge or the lower center pillar on the driver's side of the vehicle. This label shows the gross weight capacity of your vehicle and is called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, cargo, and trailer tongue weight, if pulling a trailer.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Similar appearing vehicles may have different GVWRs and payloads. Please note the Certification/Tire label on your truck or consult your dealer for additional details.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- **Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See *Off-Road Driving on page 4-12*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing

Towing Your Vehicle

Consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Service on page 7-8*.

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see Recreational Vehicle Towing following.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy towing” (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly towing” (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

With the proper preparation and equipment, many vehicles can be towed in these ways. See “Dinghy Towing” and “Dolly Towing,” following.

Here are some important things to consider before you do recreational vehicle towing:

- What’s the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure you read the tow vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations.
- How far will you tow? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Do you have the proper towing equipment? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is your vehicle ready to be towed? Just as you would prepare your vehicle for a long trip, you’ll want to make sure your vehicle is prepared to be towed. See *Before Leaving on a Long Trip on page 4-27*.

Dinghy Towing

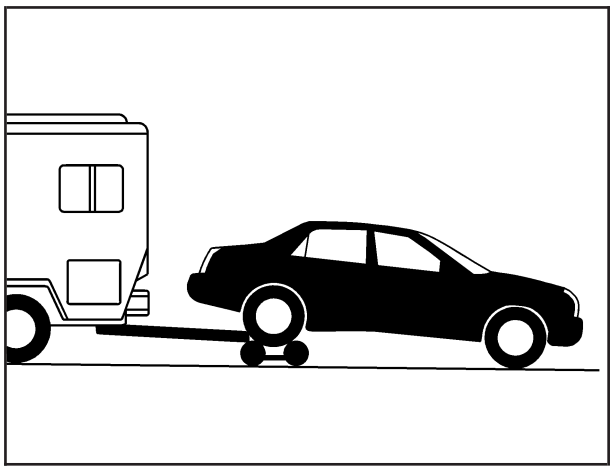
Notice: **If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If your vehicle must be towed, see “Dolly Towing” following for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Dolly Towing

Notice: **Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle if any of its wheels will be on the ground.**



If you have a Rear-Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicle, it can be towed using a dolly. If you have an All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) vehicle, it can only be towed on a flat-bed trailer. To tow your RWD vehicle using a dolly, follow these steps:

1. Put the rear wheels on the dolly.
2. Put the vehicle in PARK (P).
3. Set the parking brake and then remove the key.
4. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
5. Release the parking brake.

Level Control

This feature keeps the rear of your vehicle level as the load changes. It's automatic — you don't need to adjust anything.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. You may also damage your vehicle; the resulting repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer/retailer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify the trailering capacity of your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section. But trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That is the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, rear axle, wheel assemblies and tires are forced to work harder against the drag of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads, generating extra heat. What’s more, the trailer adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If You Do Decide to Pull a Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that you tow a trailer, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Obey speed limit restrictions when towing a trailer. Do not drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 55 mph (90 km/h), to save wear on your vehicle's parts.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the total weight on your vehicle's tires

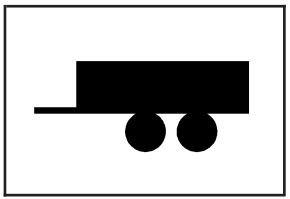
Tow/Haul Mode

Tow/haul is designed to assist while your vehicle is pulling a large or heavy load or trailer. Tow/haul is most useful while pulling such a load in rolling terrain, in stop-and-go traffic, or when you need improved low-speed control, such as when parking. The purpose of the tow/haul mode is to do the following:

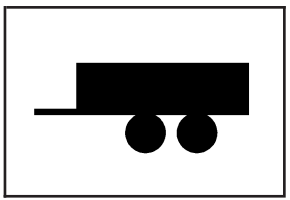
- Reduce the frequency and improve the predictability of transmission shifts when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.
- Provide the same solid shift feel when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load as when the vehicle is unloaded.
- Improve control of vehicle speed while requiring less throttle pedal activity when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Tow/haul is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75 percent of the vehicle's Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR). See "Weight of the Trailer" later in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Press this button, located below the climate control system, to enable/disable the tow/haul mode.



A light on the instrument panel will illuminate to indicate that tow/haul mode has been selected.

The vehicle will automatically turn off tow/haul every time it is started.

Driving with tow/haul activated without a heavy load or with no trailer will cause reduced fuel economy and unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics, but will not cause damage.

Operating the vehicle in tow/haul when lightly loaded or with no trailer at all will not cause damage. However, there is no benefit to the selection of tow/haul when the vehicle is unloaded. Such a selection when unloaded may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy. Tow/haul is recommended only when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Look in the following chart to find the maximum trailer weight for your vehicle.

Package	Maximum Trailer Weight	*GCWR
Base	2,000 lbs (907 kg)	6,853 lbs (3 808 kg)
V92	4,250 lbs (1 928 kg)	9,353 lbs (4 242 kg)

*The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for your vehicle should not be exceeded.

You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

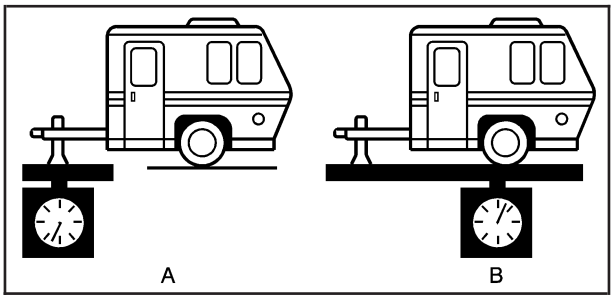
In Canada, write to:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If you have a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight your vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight your vehicle can tow. And if you tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



If you are using a weight-carrying hitch or a weight-distributing hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10-15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After you have loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, you may be able to get them right simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

Trailering may also be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce your trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

Consider the following example:

A vehicle model base weight is 5,500 lbs (2 495 kg); 2,800 lbs (1 270 kg) at the front axle and 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg) at the rear axle. It has a GVWR of 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg), a RGAWR of 4,000 lbs (1 814 kg) and a GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating) of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg). The trailer rating should be:

14,000 lbs (6350 kg)	GCWR
–5,500 lbs (2495 kg)	Vehicle Weight
8,500 lbs (3855 kg)	Trailer Rating

You can expect tongue weight to be at least 10 percent of trailer weight (850 lbs (386 kg)) and because the weight is applied well behind the rear axle, the effect on the rear axle will be greater than just the weight itself, as much as 1.5 times as much. The weight at the rear axle could be 850 lbs (386 kg) X 1.5 = 1,275 lbs (578 kg). Since the rear axle already weighs 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg), adding 1,275 lbs (578 kg) brings the total to 3,975 lbs (1 803 kg). This is very close to, but within the limit for RGAWR as well. The vehicle is set to trailer up to 8,500 lbs (3 856 kg).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

But let us say your specific vehicle is equipped with some of the latest options and you have a front seat passenger and two rear seat passengers with some luggage and gear in the vehicle as well. You may add 300 lbs (136 kg) to the front axle weight and 400 lbs (181 kg) to the rear axle weight. Your vehicle now weighs:

2,800 lbs	(1270 kg)	+	300 lbs (136 kg)	Front
2,700 lbs	(1225 kg)	+	400 lbs (181 kg)	Rear
	6,200 lbs (2812 kg)			Total

Weight is still below 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg) and you may think that you should subtract 700 additional pounds (318 kg) from your trailering capacity to stay within GCWR limits. Your maximum trailer would only be 7,800 lbs (3 538 kg). You may go further and think you must limit tongue weight to less than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) to avoid exceeding GVWR. But, you must still consider the effect on the rear axle.

Because your rear axle now weighs 3,100 lbs (1 406 kg), you can only put 900 lbs (408 kg) on the rear axle without exceeding RGAWR. The effect of tongue weight is about 1.5 times the actual weight. Dividing the 900 lbs (408 kg) by 1.5 leaves you with being able to handle only 600 lbs (272 kg) of tongue weight. Since tongue weight is usually at least 10 percent of total loaded trailer weight, you can expect that the largest trailer your vehicle can properly handle is 6,000 lbs (2 721 kg).

It is important that you make sure your vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure you are not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh your vehicle and trailer.

Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You will find these numbers on the Certification/Tire label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*. Then be sure you do not go over the GVW limit for your vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Hitches

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you will need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- The rear bumper on your vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you do not seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-39*. Dirt and water can, too.

Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains and do not attach them to the bumper. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

If you tow more than 1,000 lbs (450 kg), use trailer brakes. Because your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, do not try to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic brake system. If you do, both brake systems will not work well, or at all.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you will be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you will want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before you start, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You will need more passing distance up ahead when you are towing a trailer. And, because you are a good deal longer, you will need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When you are turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle may need a different turn signal flasher and/or extra wiring. Check with your dealer. The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you are about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you do not shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 45 mph (70 km/h) to reduce the possibility of the engine and the transmission overheating.

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here is how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but do not shift into PARK (P).

   When parking uphill, turn your wheels away from the curb. When parking downhill, turn your wheels into the curb.
2. Have someone place chocks behind the trailer wheels.
3. When the chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake and shift into PARK (P).
5. Release the regular brakes.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
   - start your engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you are pulling a trailer. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid (do not overfill), engine oil, axle lubricant, drive belt, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you are trailering, it is a good idea to review this information before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

Your cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Service 5-3
- Accessories and Modifications 5-3
- California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4
- California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 5-4
- Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
- Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle 5-5

Fuel 5-5
- Gasoline Octane 5-5
- Gasoline Specifications 5-6
- California Fuel 5-6
- Additives 5-7
- Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-7
- Filling the Tank 5-8
- Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-10

Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
- Hood Release 5-11
- Engine Compartment Overview 5-12
- Engine Oil 5-16
- Engine Oil Life System 5-19
- Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 5-21
- Automatic Transmission Fluid 5-23
- Engine Coolant 5-23
- Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap 5-26
- Engine Overheating 5-26
- Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 5-28
- Cooling System 5-29
- Power Steering Fluid 5-33
- Windshield Washer Fluid 5-34
- Brakes 5-35
- Battery 5-39
- Jump Starting 5-40

All-Wheel Drive 5-44

Rear Axle 5-46

Front Axle 5-46

Headlamp Aiming 5-47

Bulb Replacement 5-47
- High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 5-48
- Halogen Bulbs 5-48

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-49

Tires 5-51
- Winter Tires 5-52
- Tire Sidewall Labeling 5-53
- Tire Terminology and Definitions 5-56
- Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-59
- High-Speed Operation 5-60
- Tire Pressure Monitor System 5-61
- Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 5-62
- Tire Inspection and Rotation 5-66

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

When It Is Time for New Tires 5-67
Buying New Tires 5-68
Different Size Tires and Wheels 5-70
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-70
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-72
Wheel Replacement 5-72
Tire Chains 5-74
If a Tire Goes Flat 5-75
Changing a Flat Tire 5-76
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-77
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 5-80
Secondary Latch System 5-84
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-87
Compact Spare Tire 5-90

Appearance Care 5-91
Interior Cleaning 5-91
Fabric/Carpet 5-92
Leather 5-93
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-93
Wood Panels 5-93
Speaker Covers 5-93
Care of Safety Belts 5-94
Weatherstrips 5-94
Washing Your Vehicle 5-94
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-94
Finish Care 5-95
Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-95
Aluminun or Chrome-Plated Wheels and Trim 5-96
Tires 5-96
Sheet Metal Damage 5-97
Finish Damage 5-97
Underbody Maintenance 5-97
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-97
Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials 5-98

Vehicle Identification 5-99
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 5-99
Service Parts Identification Label 5-99

Electrical System 5-100
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-100
Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-100
Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-100
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-101
Underhood Fuse Block 5-101
Rear Underseat Fuse Block (Left Side) 5-105
Rear Underseat Fuse Block (Right Side) 5-108

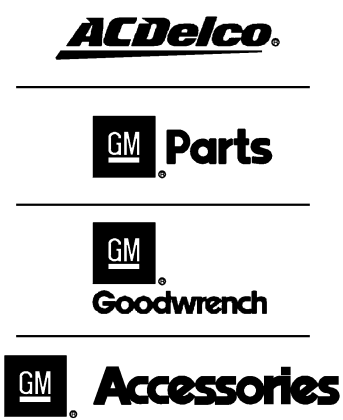
Capacities and Specifications 5-111

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Service

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer/retailer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:



Accessories and Modifications

When non-dealer/non-retailer accessories are added to your vehicle they can affect your vehicle's performance and safety, including such things as, airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control and stability control. Some of these accessories could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by warranty.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on your vehicle. Your GM dealer/retailer can accessorize your vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer/retailer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless entry transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If you want to do some of your own service work, you should use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70*.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Maintenance Record on page 6-16*.

Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This can cause wind noise and can affect fuel economy and windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies your vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 5-99*.

Gasoline Octane

If your vehicle has the 3.6L V6 engine (VIN Code 7), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. For best performance or trailer towing, you could choose to use middle grade 89 octane unleaded gasoline. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle has the 4.6L V8 engine (VIN Code A), use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. You can also use regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but your vehicle's acceleration could be slightly reduced, and you might notice a slight audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock. If the octane is less than 87, you might notice a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you could damage the engine. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 5-7* for additional information.

California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and your vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer/retailer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by your warranty.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to the fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if your vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Also, your dealer/retailer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: **Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under your warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system could be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer/retailer for service.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by your warranty.

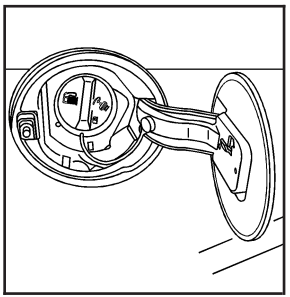
To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling the Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off your engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

To open the fuel door, apply pressure in the center of the rear edge of the fuel door and it will pop open.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise. The fuel cap has a spring in it; if the cap is released too soon, it will spring back to the right.

While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank, and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-94*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*.

The TIGHTEN GAS CAP message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display if the fuel cap is not reinstalled properly. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer/retailer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- **Dispense fuel only into approved containers.**
- **Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.**
- **Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.**
- **Do not smoke while pumping fuel.**
- **Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.**

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

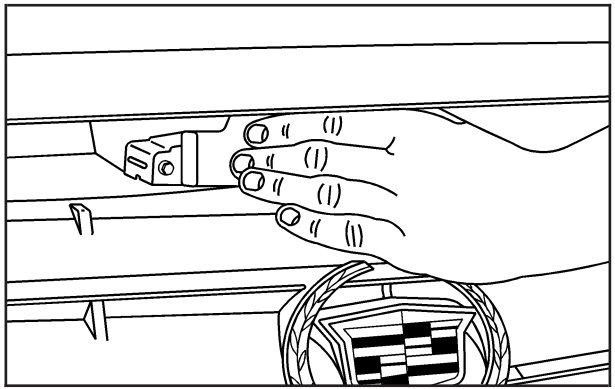
Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Hood Release

To open the hood, do the following:

1. Pull the hood release lever with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle on the lower left side of the instrument panel.



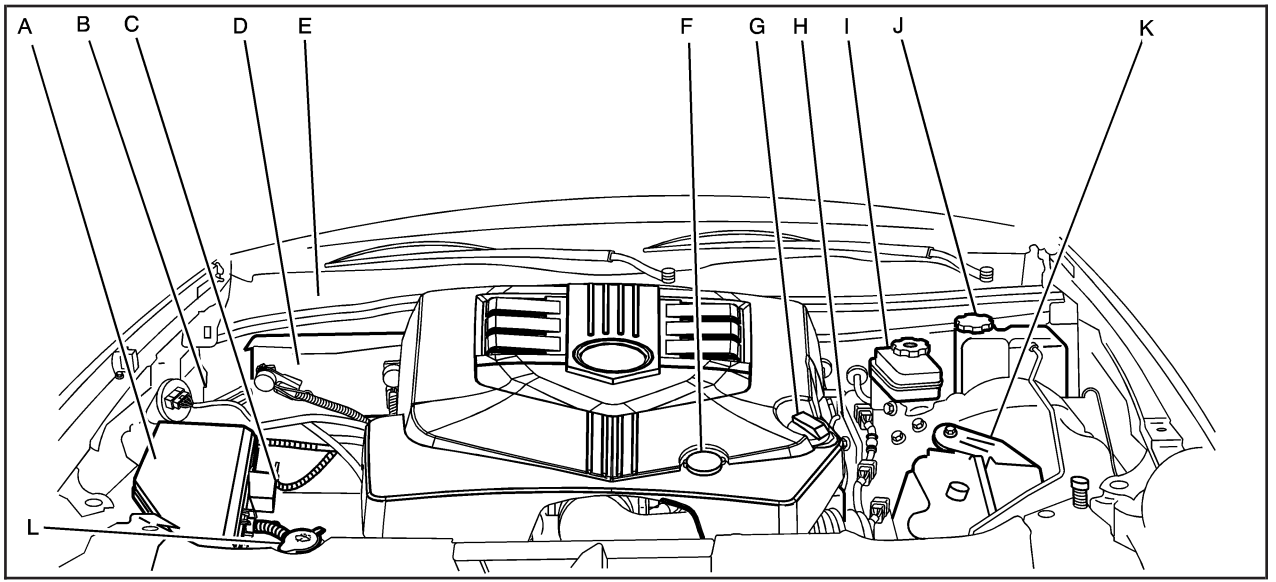
2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and find the secondary hood release lever. The lever is located under the front edge of the grille near the center. Move the release lever to the side and raise the hood.

Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then pull the hood down and close it firmly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 3.6L V6 engine, you will see the following:



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-101*.

B. Remote Negative (-) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

C. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

D. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-39*.

E. Passenger Compartment Air Filter. See *Passenger Compartment Air Filter on page 3-30*.

F. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-33*.

G. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.

H. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.

I. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-35*.

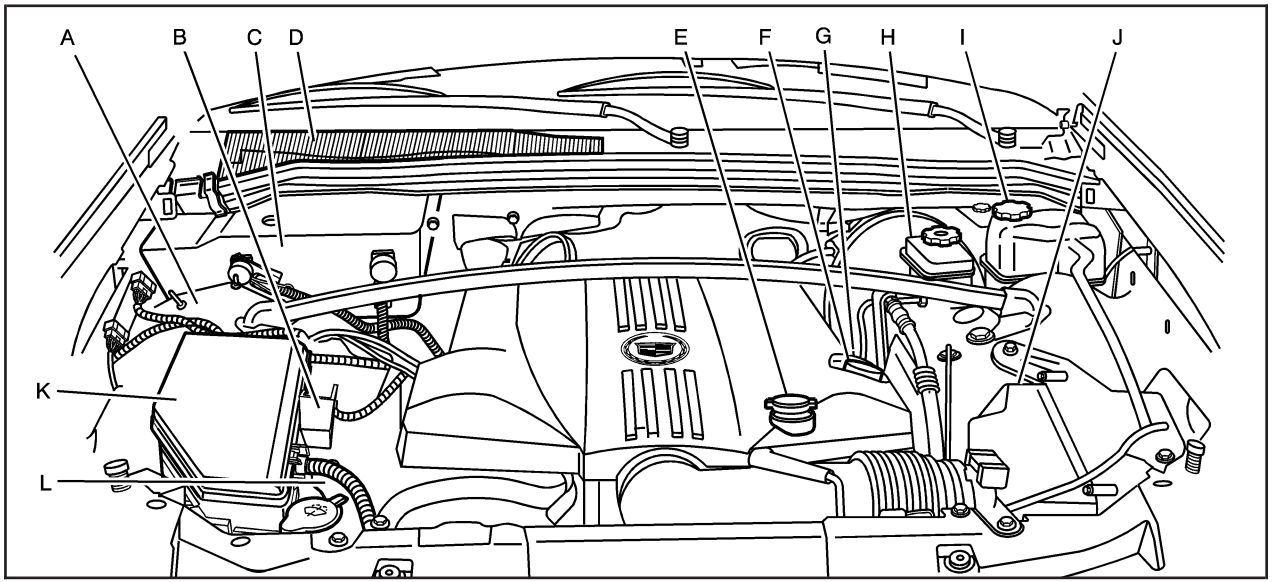
J. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap on page 5-26* and *Cooling System on page 5-29*.

K. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*.

L. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-34*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When you open the hood on the 4.6L V8 engine, you will see the following:



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A. Remote Negative (-) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

B. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

C. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-39*.

D. Passenger Compartment Air Filter. See *Passenger Compartment Air Filter on page 3-30*.

E. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-33*.

F. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.

G. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.

H. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-35*.

I. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap on page 5-26* and *Cooling System on page 5-29*.

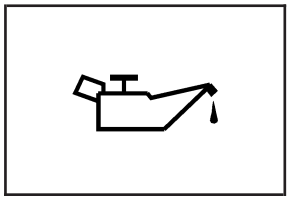
J. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*.

K. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-101*.

L. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-34*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil



Your vehicle could have an oil pressure light on the instrument cluster.

There is also an OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE message on the Driver Information Center (DIC). If the light and/or message appears, check the engine oil level right away. For more information, see “OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* and *Oil Pressure Light on page 3-44*. You should check the engine oil level regularly; this is an added reminder.

Checking Engine Oil

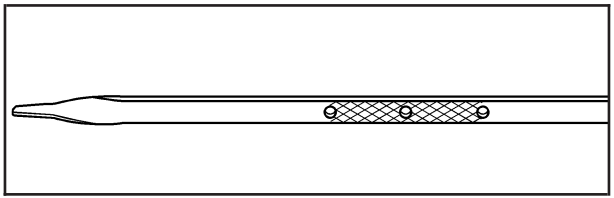
It is a good idea to check the engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

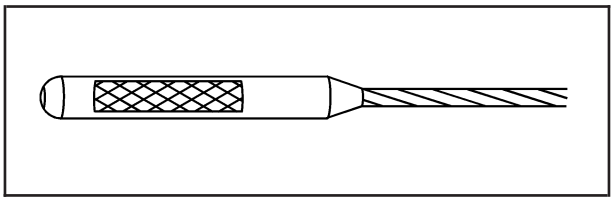
1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you do not do this, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When to Add Engine Oil



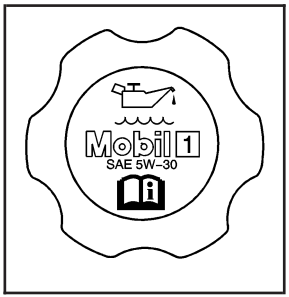
3.6L V6 Engine



4.6L V8 Engine

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add at least one quart/liter of the recommended oil. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-111*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.**

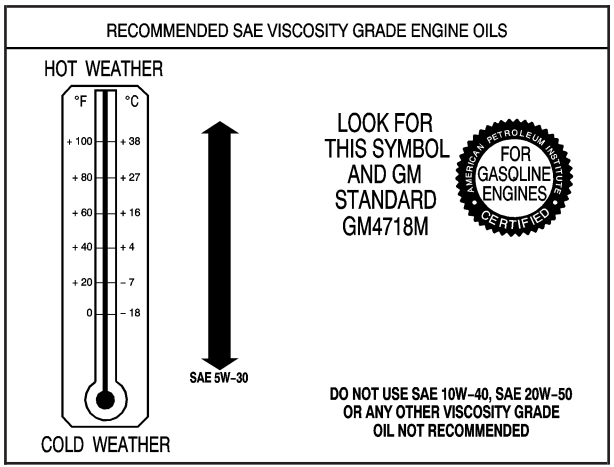


See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Be sure to add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you are through.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use



Look for three things:

- GM4718M

  Your vehicle's engine requires a special oil meeting GM Standard GM4718M. Oils meeting this standard may be identified as synthetic. However, not all synthetic oils will meet this GM standard. Look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM4718M.

Notice: **If you use oils that do not have the GM4718M Standard designation, you can cause engine damage not covered by your warranty.**

- SAE 5W-30

  As shown in the viscosity chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle.

  These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

- Oils meeting these requirements should have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Look for this on the oil container, and use only those oils that are identified as meeting GM Standard GM4718M and have the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container.

Your vehicle's engine is filled at the factory with a Mobil 1® synthetic oil, which meets all requirements for your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Substitute Engine Oil: When adding oil to maintain engine oil level, oil meeting GM Standard GM4718M might not be available. You can add substitute oil designated SAE 5W-30 with the starburst symbol at all temperatures. Substitute oil not meeting GM Standard GM4718M should not be used for an oil change.

Engine Oil Additives

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM standards are all you need for good performance and engine protection.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will come on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service people who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change the oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change the engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Whenever the oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change the oil prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message being turned on, reset the system.

Always reset the engine oil life to 100% after every oil change. It will not reset itself. To reset the Engine Oil Life System:

1. Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC.
2. Press and hold the SET/RESET button on the DIC for more than five seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when you start your vehicle, the Engine Oil Life System has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

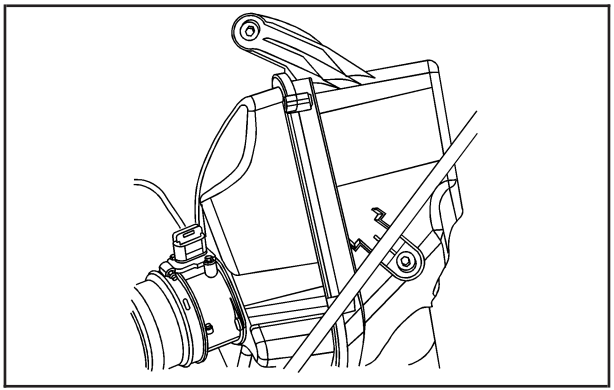
What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of used oil, ask your dealer/retailer, a service station, or a local recycling center for help.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



4.6L V8 shown, 3.6L V6 similar

The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle, near the front. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (80 000 km) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the air cleaner/filter remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To inspect or replace the filter, do the following:

1. Remove the two screws located on the top of the cover.
2. Disconnect the coolant recovery hose so that it is not going across the top of the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. The two sides of the airbox are hinged at the bottom. Open the airbox by pushing the top of the airbox cover toward the engine.
4. Remove the air filter by lifting it straight up through the opening in the airbox.
5. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter. See *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-14* for the correct part number for the filter.
6. Reinstall the cover by reversing Steps 1 through 4.

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

Notice: **If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into your engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to the dealer/retailer service department and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, you should have this done at the dealership service department. Contact your dealer for additional information or the procedure can be found in the service manual. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage your vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.**

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Additional Required Services on page 6-6*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL® extended life coolant.

The following explains the cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If the engine overheats, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-26*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Allow the warning lights and gages to work as they should.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at the first maintenance service after each 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half clean, drinkable water and one-half DEX-COOL® coolant which will not damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you do not need to add anything else.

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

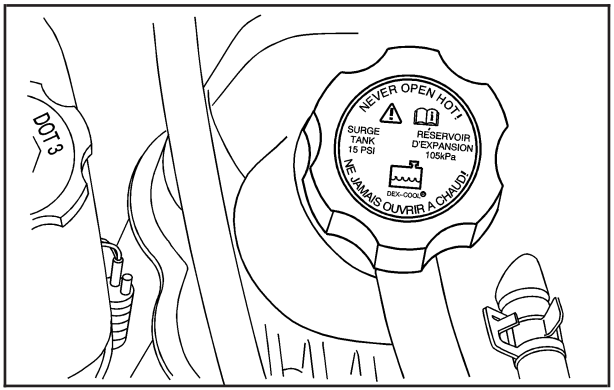
Notice: **If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

If you have to add coolant more than once or twice a year, have your dealer/retailer check your cooling system.

Notice: **If you use extra inhibitors and/or additives in your vehicle's cooling system, you could damage your vehicle. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking Coolant



The coolant surge tank and pressure cap are located on the driver's side of the vehicle, toward the rear of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at the FULL COLD/FROID line on the side of the surge tank. Follow the arrow from the top of the tank down the side to the horizontal mark.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding Coolant

If more coolant is needed, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture at the surge tank, but only when the engine is cool.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight and fully seated.

Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

The coolant surge tank pressure cap must be fully installed on the coolant surge tank. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

Engine Overheating

There are two engine hot messages that could be displayed in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

If the engine is overheating, then you will find a coolant temperature gage and a coolant warning light on the instrument panel. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-40* and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 3-40* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the vehicles engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

Notice: **If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

An overheat warning, can indicate a serious problem.

If you get an engine overheat warning but see or hear no steam, the problem might not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in NEUTRAL (N) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) and let the engine idle.
2. Set the climate controls to the highest heat setting and fan speed and open the windows, as necessary.

If the coolant warning light is not on or the coolant temperature gage does not indicate the engine is overheating, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warnings do not come back on, drive normally.

If the warnings continue and you have not stopped, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is still no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warnings are still indicated, turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle until it cools down. Also, see “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” later in this section.

You might decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

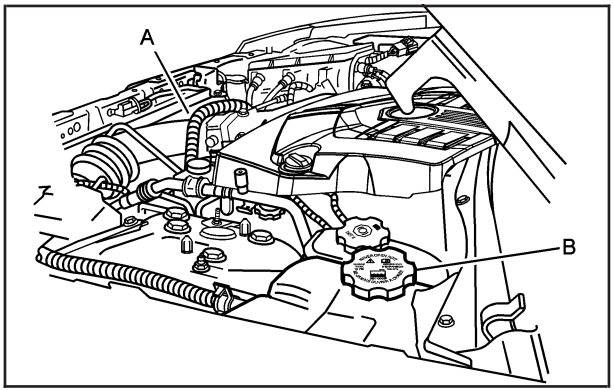
This operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Should a hot engine condition exist, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, there is a loss in power and engine performance. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Notice: **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss and change the oil. See *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cooling System

When you decide it is safe to lift the hood, here is what you will see:



3.6L V6 shown, 4.6L V8 similar

A. Electric Engine Cooling Fans

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

Some vehicles may be equipped with an engine driven fan, as well as the electric pusher fans (A) which are located behind the vehicle's grille.

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at or slightly above the FULL COLD/FROID line on the side of the coolant surge tank. If it is not, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the electric engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they are not, your vehicle needs service.

Notice: **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

If you have not found a problem yet, check to see if coolant is visible in the surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at the FULL COLD/FROID line on the side of the coolant surge tank, add a 50/50 mixture of *clean, drinkable water* and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the coolant surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and coolant surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Notice: **In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.**

⚠ CAUTION:

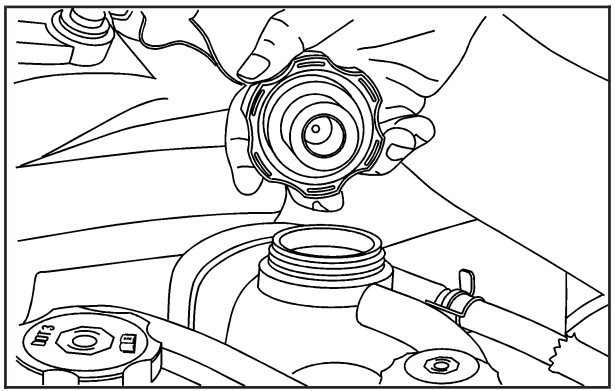
You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

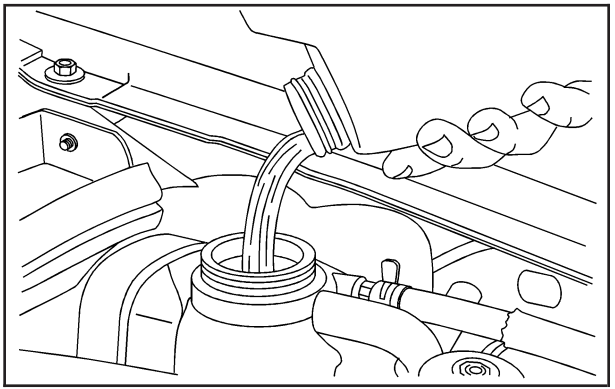
If no coolant is visible in the surge tank, add coolant as follows:

1. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise (left) about one-quarter turn and then stop.

   If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.



2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to slightly above the FULL COLD/FROID line on the side of the coolant surge tank.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

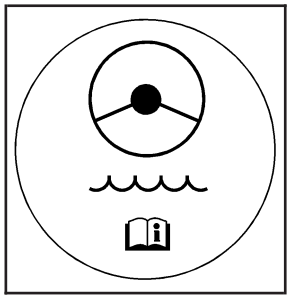
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. The upper radiator hose is the largest of the hoses which comes out of the radiator, on the passenger's side of the vehicle. Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD/FROID line on the side of the coolant surge tank.

5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.

Recheck the coolant level in the bottle next time you use your vehicle to insure the system is full when cold. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.

Power Steering Fluid



See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be within the HOT mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level within the mark.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*. Always use the proper fluid.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect fluid may damage your vehicle and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.**

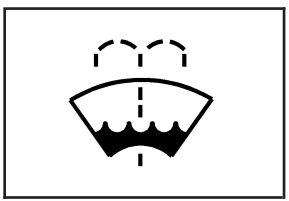
Windshield Washer Fluid

What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

The WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) when the fluid level is low. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

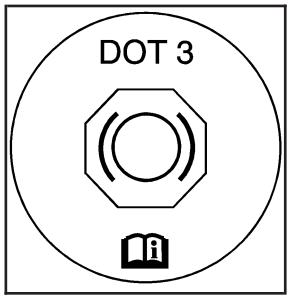
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage the vehicle's windshield washer system and paint.**

Brakes

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake hydraulic system. If it is, you should have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

It is not a good idea to top off the brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ CAUTION:

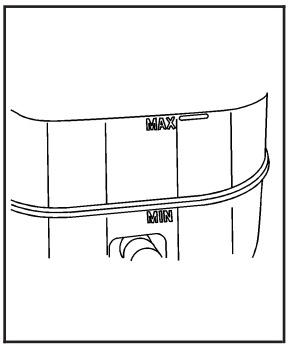
If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See "Checking Brake Fluid" in this section.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38*.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check the brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

Checking Brake Fluid

The brake fluid can be checked without taking off the cap by looking at the brake fluid reservoir.



The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have your brake hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, DOT-3 brake fluid is recommended for use. DOT-4 brake fluid is also compatible with your vehicle's brake system parts. However, if you choose to use DOT-4 fluid, it is recommended that you flush the brake hydraulic system and refill it with new DOT-4 fluid at a regular maintenance service every two years. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6*. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-94*.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake Wear

Your vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving, except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-111*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer/retailer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time you make a brake stop, the disc brakes adjust for wear.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When you replace parts of the braking system — for example, when the brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in — be sure you get new approved replacement parts. If you do not, the brakes might not work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between the front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you have come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

Battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, see your dealer/retailer for one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for battery location.

Warning: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: If you drive your vehicle infrequently, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This will help keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: For extended storage of your vehicle, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger. This will help maintain the charge of the battery over an extended period of time.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Jump Starting

If your vehicle's battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- **They contain acid that can burn you.**
- **They contain gas that can explode or ignite.**
- **They contain enough electricity to burn you.**

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that would not be covered by your warranty.**

Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage your vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

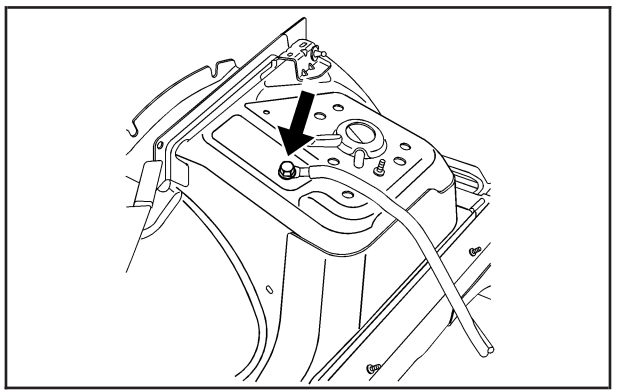
   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in NEUTRAL before setting the parking brake.

Notice: **If you leave your radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always turn off your radio and other accessories when jump starting your vehicle.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Open the hoods and locate the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations or the remote positive (+) and remote negative (–) terminals of the other vehicle. Then locate the remote positive (+) location on your vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on locations the terminals.



Your vehicle has a remote negative (–) ground location, as shown in the illustration. It is located on the rear passenger side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12*. You should always use this remote ground location, instead of the terminal on the battery.

Notice: **If you connect a negative cable to the Engine Control Module (ECM), ECM mounting bracket, or any cables that attach to the ECM bracket, you may damage the ECM. Always attach the negative cable to your vehicle's remote negative ground location, instead of the ECM, ECM bracket, or any cables attached to the ECM bracket.**

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ CAUTION:

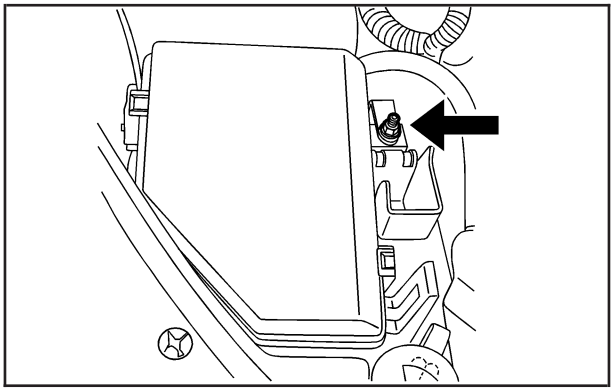
Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



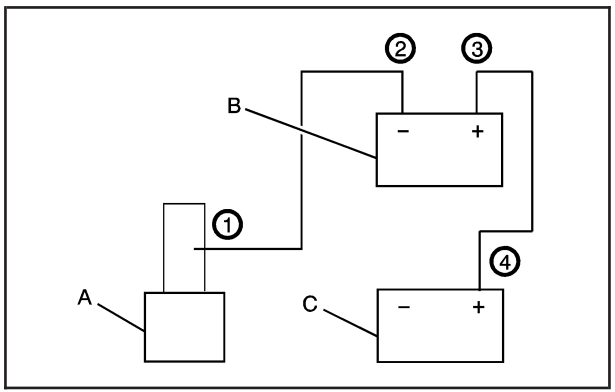
6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.
9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

   Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one. Your vehicle's remote negative (–) ground location is for this purpose.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal

B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (–) Terminals

C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.

All-Wheel Drive

All of the lubricant checks in this section apply to your vehicle. If you have an all-wheel-drive vehicle, there is an additional system that need lubrication.

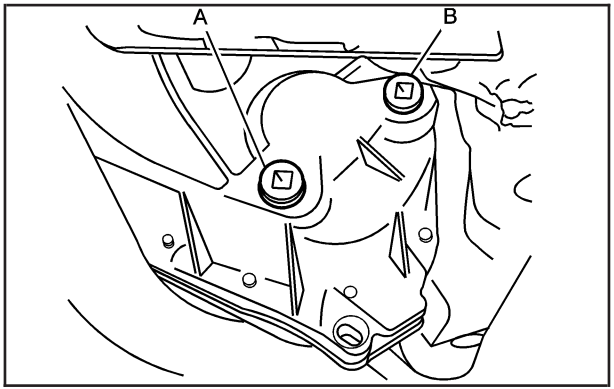
Transfer Case

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the transfer case fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check Lubricant



A. Drain Plug

B. Fill Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the transfer case, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

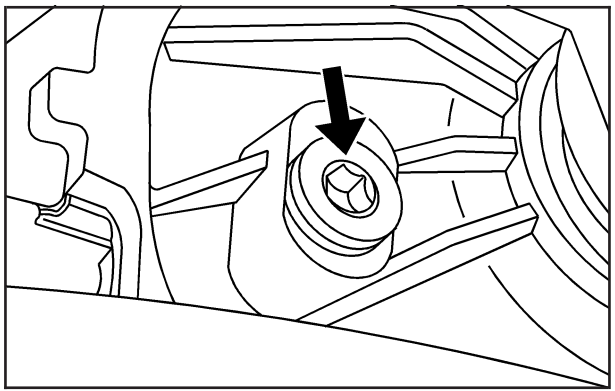
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Axle

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the rear axle, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

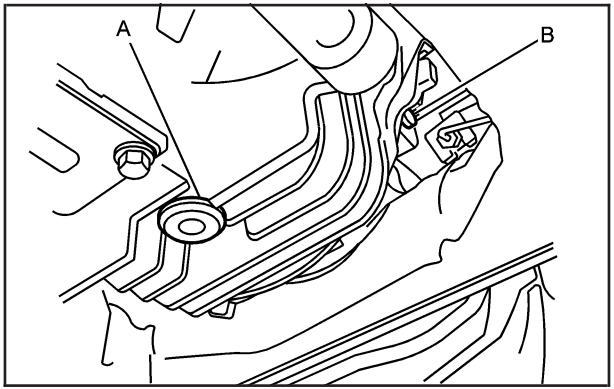
Front Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the front axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check Lubricant



A. Drain Plug

B. Filler Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the front axle, you may need to add some lubricant.

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if your vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low-beam headlamps may be necessary if oncoming drivers flash their high-beam headlamps at you (for vertical aim).

If the headlamps need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that you take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

Bulb Replacement

It is recommended that all bulbs be replaced by your dealer/retailer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ CAUTION:

The low beam high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician service them.

Your vehicle has HID headlamps. After your vehicle's HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, you may notice that the beam is a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

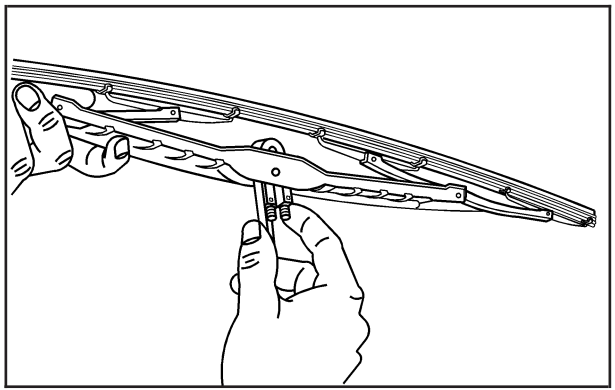
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

It's a good idea to clean or replace the wiper blade assembly on a regular basis or when worn. For proper windshield wiper blade length and type, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-14*.

To replace the wiper blade assembly, do the following:

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Turn on the windshield wipers and turn them off again when the wipers are in the out-wipe position. The driver side blade will be straight up and down on the windshield.
3. Pull the windshield wiper assembly away from the windshield.



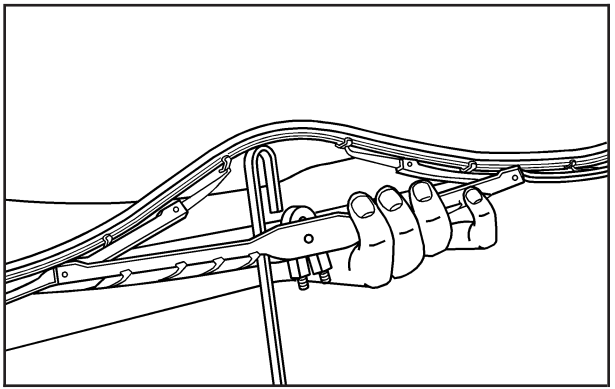
4. Lift the wiper blade assembly up so it is in a T-shaped position. You should be able to see a tab.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Squeeze the tab together and pull the wiper blade assembly down far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm. Slide the assembly away from the arm.

   Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield.

6. Replace the blade with a new one.



7. Reinstall the wiper blade assembly by sliding it over the wiper arm to engage the J-hooked end. Pull up on the assembly to lock it into place.
8. Repeat the steps for the other wiper.

Rear Wiper Blade Replacement

To replace the rear wiper blade follow the steps listed previously.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your vehicle Warranty booklet for details.

⚠ CAUTION:

- **Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.**
- **Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.**
- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.**

See *High-Speed Operation on page 5-60* for inflation pressure adjustment for high speed driving.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Low-Profile Performance Tire

If your vehicle has P255/50R20 size tires, they are classified as low-profile performance tires. These tires are designed for very responsive driving on wet or dry pavement. You may also notice more road noise with low-profile performance tires and that they tend to wear faster.

Notice: **If your vehicle has low-profile tires, they are more susceptible to damage from road hazards or curb impact than standard profile tires. Tire and/or wheel assembly damage can occur when coming into contact with road hazards like, potholes, or sharp edged objects, or when sliding into a curb. Your vehicle warranty does not cover this type of damage. Keep tires set to the correct inflation pressure and, when possible avoid contact with curbs, potholes, and other road hazards.**

Winter Tires

If you expect to drive on snow or ice covered roads often, you may want to get winter tires for your vehicle. All season tires provide good overall performance on most surfaces but they may not offer the traction you would like or the same level of performance as winter tires on snow or ice covered roads.

Winter tires, in general, are designed for increased traction on snow and ice covered roads. With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life. After switching to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

See your dealer/retailer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Also, see *Buying New Tires on page 5-68*.

If you choose to use winter tires:

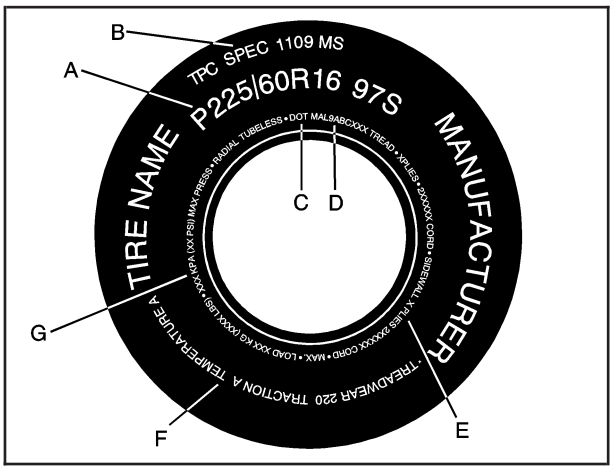
- Use tires of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.
- Use only radial ply tires of the same size, load range, and speed rating as the original equipment tires.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as your original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If you choose winter tires with a lower speed rating, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples below show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

(A) Tire Size: The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

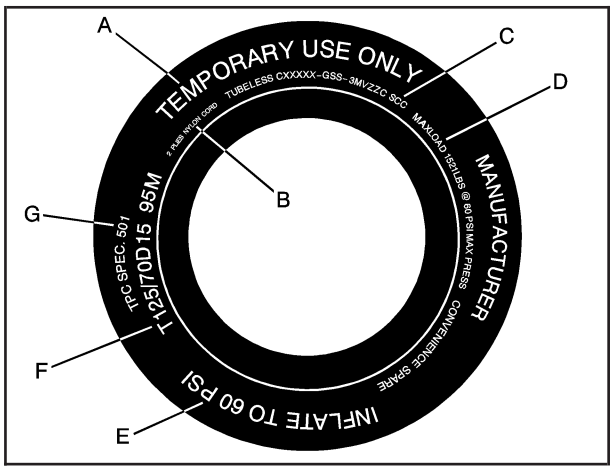
(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-70*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.



Compact Spare Tire Example

(A) Temporary Use Only: The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and should not be driven at speeds over 65 mph (105 km/h). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. If your vehicle has a compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-90* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 5-75*.

(B) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

(E) Tire Inflation: The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*.

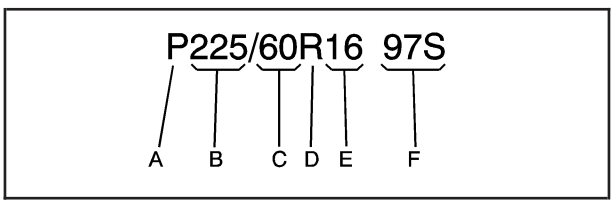
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

(F) Tire Size : A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

Tire Size

The following illustration shows an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load range and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carry capacity a tire is certified to carry. The load index can range from 1 to 279. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load. Speed ratings range from A to Z.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*.

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-67*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-70*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Premature or irregular wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Reduced fuel economy**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to your vehicle. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget to check the compact spare tire, it should be at 60 psi (420 kPa). For additional information regarding the compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-90*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

High-Speed Operation

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving at high speeds, 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build up and can cause sudden tire failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If you will be driving at high speeds, speeds of 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, where it is legal, set the cold inflation pressure to the maximum inflation pressure shown on the tire sidewall, or 38 psi (265 kPa), whichever is lower. See the example following. When you end this high-speed driving, return the tires to the cold inflation pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Example:

You will find the maximum load and inflation pressure molded on the tire's sidewall, in small letters, near the rim flange. It will read something like this: Maximum load 690 kg (1521 lbs) 300 kPa (44 psi) Max. Press.

For this example, you would set the inflation pressure for high-speed driving at 38 psi (265 kPa).

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-62*, for additional information.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry and Science Canada

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

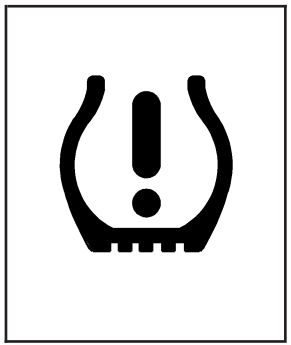
1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the vehicle's tires and transmits the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument panel cluster.

At the same time a message to check the pressure in a specific tire appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed by the driver. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-48* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) are getting low and need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*.

Your vehicle's TPMS can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* and *Tires on page 5-51*.

Notice: **Liquid tire sealants could damage the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors. Sensor damage caused by using a tire sealant is not covered by your warranty. Do not use liquid tire sealants.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message is also displayed. The low tire warning light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause the malfunction light and DIC message to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The TPMS malfunction light and DIC message should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPMS sensor.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The DIC message and TPMS malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the TPMS malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer/retailer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match your vehicle's original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended for your vehicle could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 5-68*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer/retailer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you rotate your vehicle's tires or replace one or more of the TPMS sensors, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The TPMS sensors can also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. If increasing the tire's air pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall.

To decrease air-pressure out of a tire you can use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.

You have two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer than two minutes, to match the first tire and wheel, or more than five minutes to match all four tire and wheel positions the matching process stops and you need to start over.

The TPMS sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Press the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter's LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time for approximately five seconds. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
4. Start with the driver side front tire.
5. Remove the valve cap from the valve cap stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for five seconds, or until a horn chirp sounds. The horn chirp, which may take up to 30 seconds to sound, confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
6. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
9. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Inspection and Rotation

We recommend that you regularly inspect your vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, for signs of wear or damage. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-67* for more information.

Tire rotation is not recommended if your vehicle has the following tire combinations:

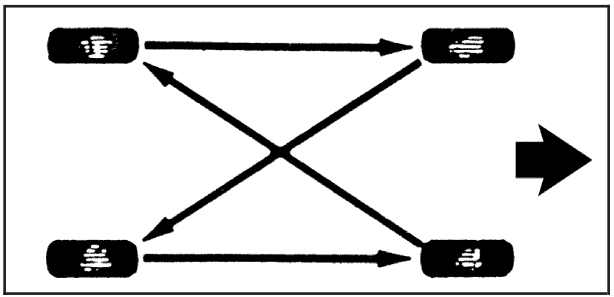
- P235/65R17 size tires on the front wheels and P255/60R17 size tires on the rear wheels.
- P235/60R18 size tires on the front wheels and P255/55R18 size tires on the rear wheels.

Different tire sizes should not be rotated front to rear. Each tire and wheel should only be used in its original front or rear position.

Tire rotation is recommended if your vehicle is equipped with P255/50R20 size tires on all four wheel positions. These tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

The purpose of a regular tire rotation is to achieve a uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. This will ensure that your vehicle continues to perform most like it did when the tires were new.

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-67* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-72*.



When rotating P255/50R20 size tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the compact spare tire in the tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-62*.

Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-111*.

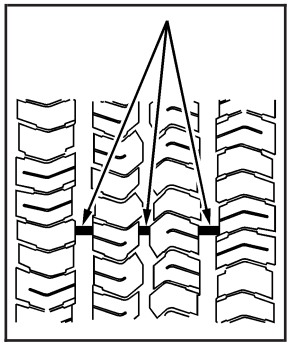
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Various factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions, influence when you need new tires.



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators.

You need new tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The rubber in tires degrades over time, even if they are not being used. This is also true for the spare tire, if your vehicle has one. Multiple conditions affect how fast this aging takes place, including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance. With proper care and maintenance tires will typically wear out before they degrade due to age. If you are unsure about the need to replace your tires as they get older, consult the tire manufacturer for more information.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 5-53*, for additional information.

GM recommends replacing tires in sets of four. This is because uniform tread depth on all tires will help keep your vehicle performing most like it did when the tires were new. Replacing less than a full set of tires can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66*.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as your original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tires. If you choose snow tires with a lower speed rating, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes (other than those originally installed on your vehicle), brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes (other than those originally installed on your vehicle), brands, or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels. It is all right to drive with your vehicle's compact spare temporarily, it was developed for use on your vehicle. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-90*.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed on it. Non-TPC Spec rated tires may give a low-pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec rated tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-61*.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this could affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as anti-lock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 5-68* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for additional information.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment might need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer/retailer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer/retailer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer/retailer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, and TPMS sensors for your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Chains

⚠ CAUTION:

If your vehicle has P255/50R20 size tires, do not use tire chains. They can damage your vehicle because there is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle, and do not spin the vehicle's wheels.

If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

Notice: **If your vehicle has a tire size other than P255/50R20 use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the tires of the rear axle. Do not use chains on the tires of the front axle. Tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your vehicle's hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

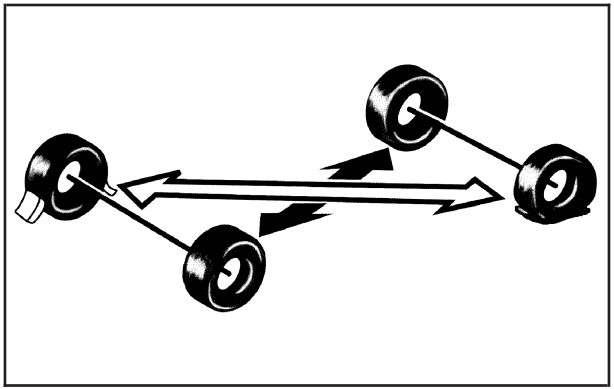
Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. **Set the parking brake firmly.**
2. **Put the shift lever in PARK (P).**
3. **Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.**
4. **Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.**

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When your vehicle has a flat tire, use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks.



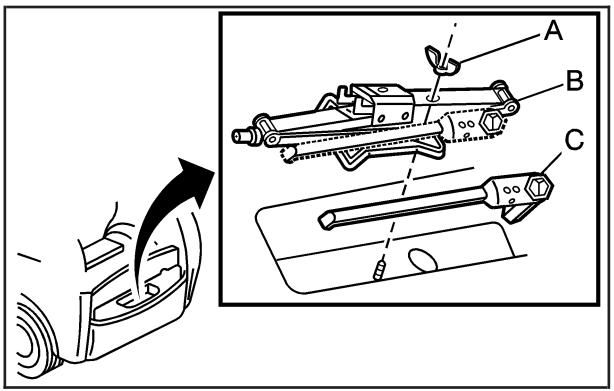
The following information tells you how to use the jack and change a tire.

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The equipment is located in the rear of the vehicle. To access the equipment:

1. Remove the storage bin to access the jack if your vehicle has the cargo management system.

   If your vehicle has the third row seat, remove the head rest storage tray to access the jack.



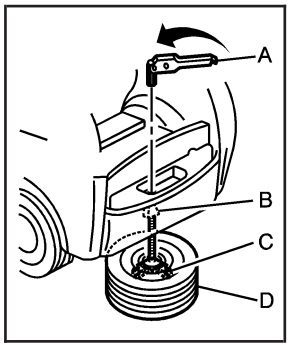
2. Turn the wing nut (A) holding the jack (B) (and storage tray, if applicable) counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the jack and wheel wrench (C).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing the Spare Tire

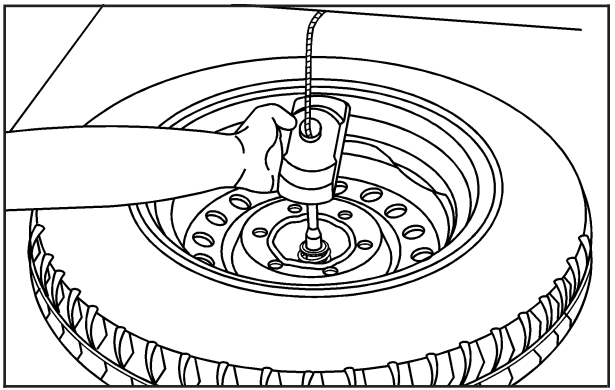
The compact spare tire is located under the vehicle, ahead of the rear bumper. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-90* for more information about the compact spare.

To remove the spare tire from the vehicle, do the following:



A. Wheel Wrench
B. Cable
C. Retainer
D. Compact Spare Tire

1. Open the liftgate. See *Power Liftgate on page 2-13* for more information.
2. Open the storage compartment door of the cargo management system that is nearest the liftgate and remove the container.
3. Attach the wheel wrench (A) into the hoist shaft.
4. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue turning the wrench until the spare tire (D) can be pulled out from under the vehicle.



5. Tilt the retainer (C) and slip it through the wheel opening to remove the spare tire from the cable (B).

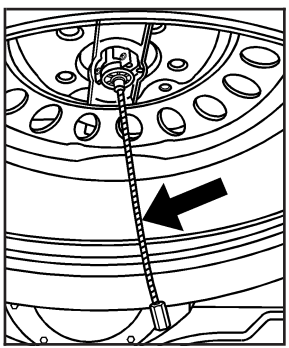
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Turn the wrench clockwise until you feel two slips or hear two clicks after removing the spare tire to raise the cable back up.

   Do not store a full-size or a flat road tire under the vehicle. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-87*.

To continue changing the flat tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 5-80*.

If the spare tire will not lower, the secondary latch might be engaged causing the tire not to lower. Do the following to check the cable:



1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable is visible. If it is not visible, see *Secondary Latch System on page 5-84*.
2. If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot over-tighten the cable.
3. Loosen the cable then by turning the wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.
4. Tighten the cable all the way and then loosen it at least two times, if the spare tire has not lowered.

   If the spare tire did lower to the ground, continue with Step 4 under *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-77*.

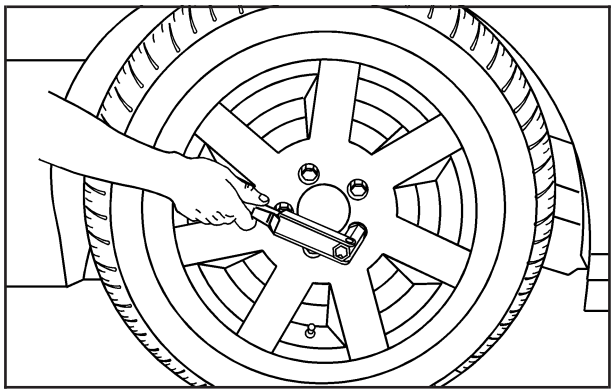
If you still cannot lower the spare tire to the ground, see *Secondary Latch System on page 5-84*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

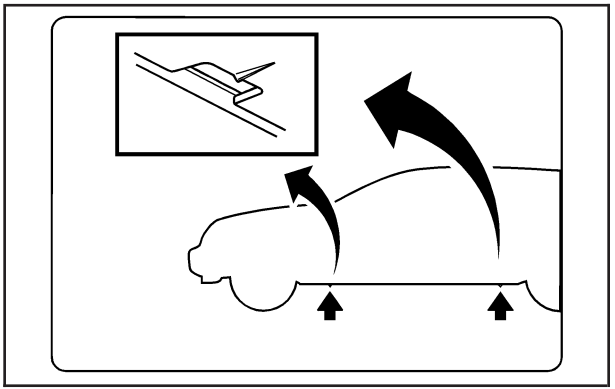
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

To remove the flat tire and install the spare:

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76* for more information.



2. Loosen the wheel nuts, but do not remove them yet, using the wheel wrench. Turn the handle about 180 degrees, then flip the handle back to the starting position. This avoids taking the wrench off the lug nut for each turn.



3. Find the jacking location using the V–shaped notches located in the plastic molding.
4. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack.

⚠ CAUTION:

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

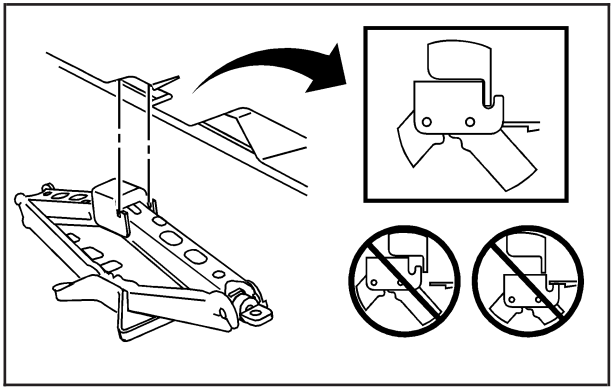
⚠ CAUTION:

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.

5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the jack lift head until the jack just fits under the vehicle.

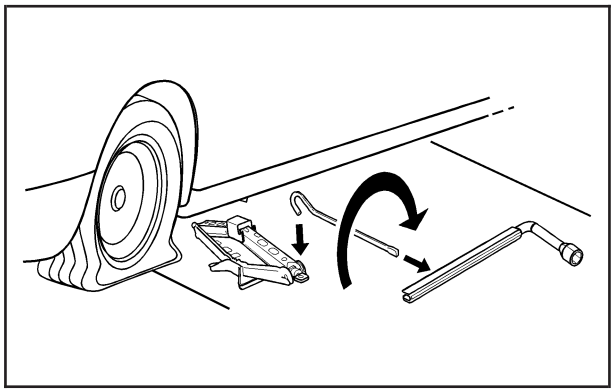


6. Raise the jack by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until the slots in the jack head fit into the metal flange located behind the triangle on the plastic molding as shown.

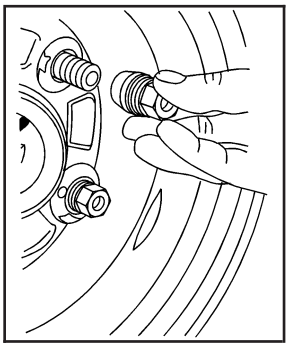
Notice: **Using a jack to raise the vehicle without positioning it correctly could damage your vehicle. When raising your vehicle on a jack, be sure to position it correctly under the frame and avoid contact with the plastic molding.**

7. Put the compact spare tire near you.

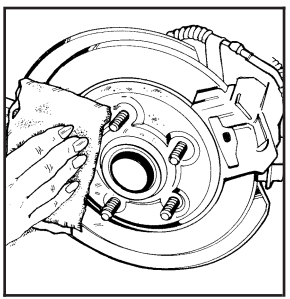
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



8. Raise the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground for the compact spare tire to fit under the vehicle.



9. Remove all the wheel nuts and the flat tire.



10. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

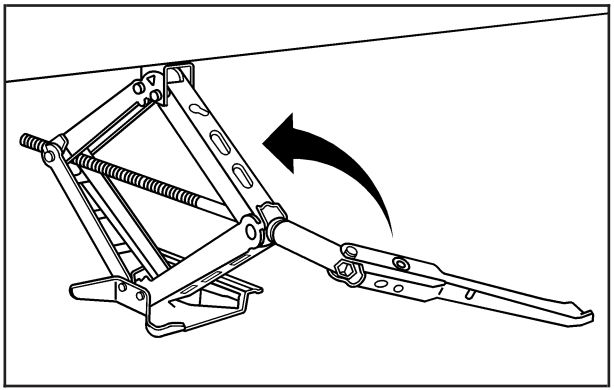
⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

⚠ CAUTION:

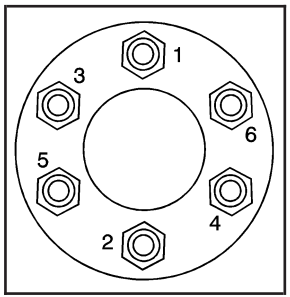
Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. Because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

11. Install the spare tire.
12. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel.
13. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.



14. Lower the vehicle by attaching the wheel wrench to the jack and turning the wrench counterclockwise. Lower the jack completely.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



15. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence, as shown.

⚠ CAUTION:

Incorrect or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to a crash. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new original equipment wheel nuts. Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-111* for wheel nut torque specification.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.**

16. Do not try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare tire. It will not fit. Store the wheel cover securely in the rear of the vehicle until you have the flat tire repaired or replaced.

Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody mounted tire hoist assembly that has a secondary latch system. It is designed to stop the compact spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle if the cable holding the spare tire is damaged. For the secondary latch to work, the tire must be stowed with the valve stem pointing down. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-87* for instructions on storing the spare tire correctly.

⚠ CAUTION:

Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed next.

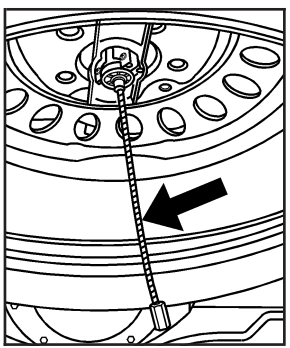
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

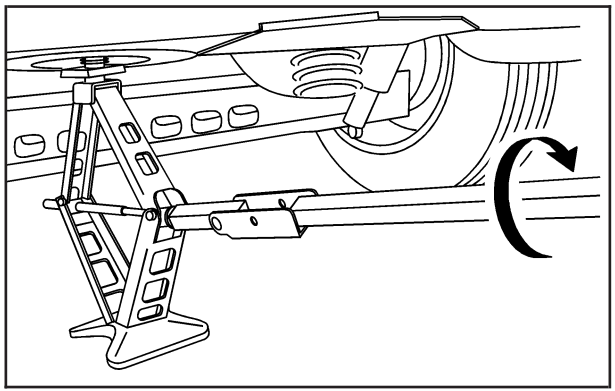
Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from the under spare.

To release the spare tire from the secondary latch:

1. If the cable is not visible, start this procedure at Step 3.

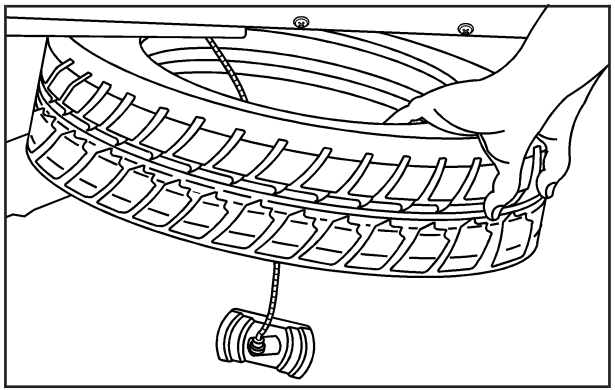


2. If the cable is visible, place the wrench on the hoist drive nut and turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 6 inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.
3. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack and raise the jack at least 10 turns.
4. Place the jack under the vehicle, ahead of the rear bumper. Position the center lift point of the jack under the center of the spare tire.

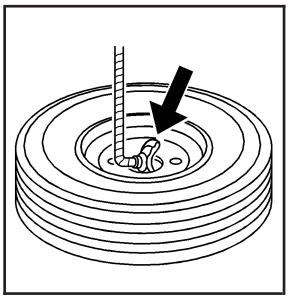


5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the secondary latch spring.
6. Keep raising the jack until the spare tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place, this lets you know that the secondary latch has released.
7. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire is resting on the wheel wrench.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



8. Grasp the spare tire with both hands and pull it out from under the vehicle.
9. Reach under the vehicle and remove the wheel wrench and jack.



10. Tilt the retainer and slip it through the wheel opening when the spare tire has been completely lowered.
11. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the cable back up if the cable is hanging.

Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare tire using the hoist assembly until it has been repaired or replaced.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

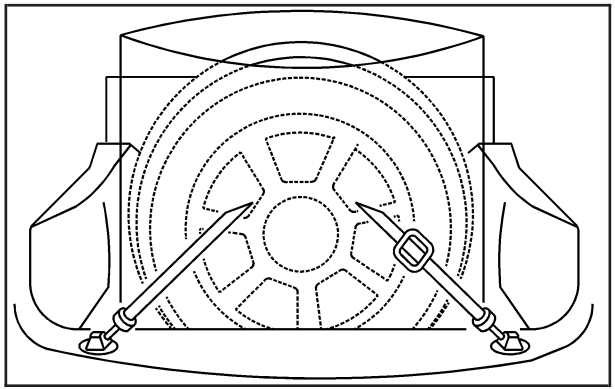
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Storing the Flat Tire with Third Row Passengers

1. Put back all tools as they were stored in the rear storage compartment and put the compartment cover back on.
2. Use the power third row seat button, near the liftgate, to tilt the third row seatback forward slightly.

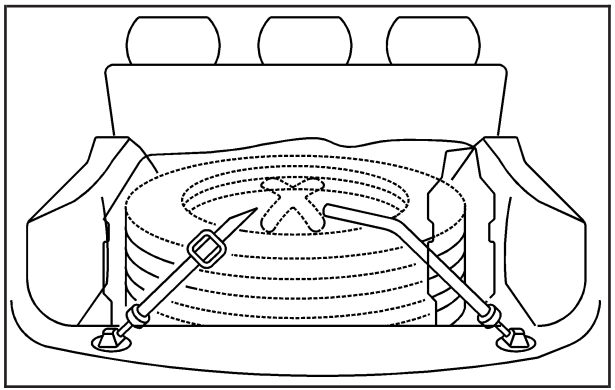


3. Place the flat tire in the tire storage bag and put the tire in an upright position against the third row seat.
4. Route the tie-down strap through the tire as shown in the graphic and attach the strap to the cargo tie-downs in the rear of the vehicle.
5. Tighten the tie-down strap.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Storing the Flat Tire with a Flat Load Floor

1. Put back all tools as they were stored in the rear storage compartment and put the compartment cover back on.



2. Place the flat tire in the tire storage bag and put the tire in a horizontal position on the floor in the rear of the vehicle.
3. Route the tie-down strap through the tire as shown in the graphic and attach the strap to the cargo tie-downs in the rear of the vehicle.
4. Tighten the tie-down strap.

Storing the Spare Tire and Tools

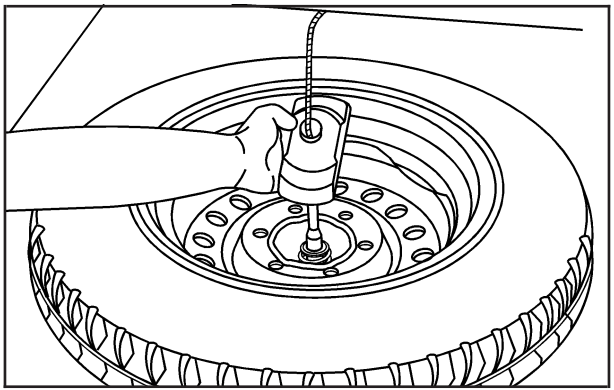
⚠ CAUTION:

The underbody-mounted spare tire needs to be stored with the valve stem pointing down. If the spare tire is stored with the valve stem pointing upwards, its secondary latch will not work properly and the spare tire could loosen and suddenly fall from your vehicle. If this happened when your vehicle was being driven, the tire might contact a person or another vehicle, causing injury and, of course, damage to itself as well. Be sure the underbody-mounted spare tire is stored with its valve stem pointing down.

To store the spare tire and tools, do the following:

1. Lay the compact spare tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle. Position the compact spare tire so that the valve stem is pointed down facing the rear of the vehicle.
2. Lower the cable to the ground. See *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-77*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



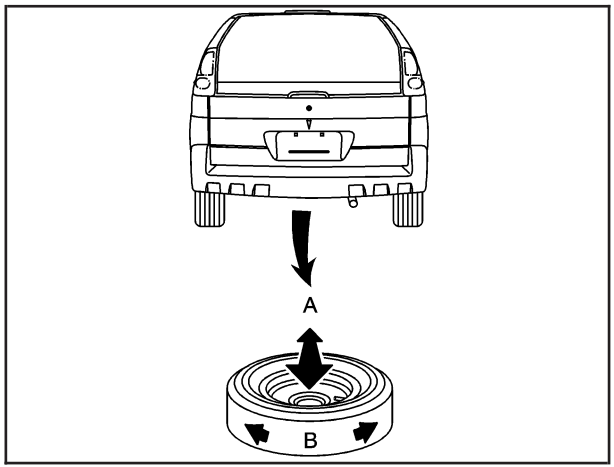
3. Tilt the retainer downward and slip it through the center hole of the spare tire.

   Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.

4. Attach the wheel wrench to the hoist shaft.
5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to lift the spare tire.
6. When the tire is almost in the stored position, turn the tire so that the valve stem is towards the rear of the vehicle.

   This will help when you check and maintain tire pressure in the spare.

7. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle. Continue turning the wheel wrench until you feel more than two clicks. This indicates that the compact spare tire is secure and the cable is tight. The spare tire hoist cannot be overtightened.



8. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn the tire (B). If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.

Put back all tools as they were stored in the rear storage compartment and put the compartment cover back on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compact Spare Tire

Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

After installing the compact spare on the vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/h) for distances up to 3,000 miles (5 000 km), so you can finish your trip and have the full-size tire repaired or replaced where you want. You must calibrate the tire inflation monitor system after installing or removing the compact spare. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-61*. The system may not work correctly when the compact spare is installed on the vehicle. Of course, it's best to replace the spare with a full-size tire as soon as you can. The spare will last longer and be in good shape in case you need it again.

Notice: **When the compact spare is installed, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails. That can damage the tire and wheel, and maybe other parts of your vehicle.**

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

And do not mix the compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Notice: **Tire chains will not fit your compact spare. Using them can damage your vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on your compact spare.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Appearance Care

Interior Cleaning

Your vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on your upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from your upholstery. It is important to keep your upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. Your vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to your home furnishings may also transfer color to your vehicle's interior.

When cleaning your vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

Notice: **If you use abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on your vehicle, you could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on your vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in your vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning your vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening your vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Your dealer/retailer has a product for cleaning your vehicle's glass. Should it become necessary, you can also obtain a product from your dealer/retailer to remove odors from your vehicle's upholstery.

Do not clean your vehicle using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a stiff brush. It can cause damage to your vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Never apply heavy pressure or rub aggressively with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage your interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps. Avoid laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. Using too much soap will leave a residue that leaves streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide.
- Do not heavily saturate your upholstery while cleaning.
- Damage to your vehicle's interior may result from the use of many organic solvents such as naptha, alcohol, etc.

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For soils, always try to remove them first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean, use the following instructions:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water can be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of your leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on leather.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces.

Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of your interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on your instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Wood Panels

Use a clean cloth moistened in warm, soapy water (use mild dish washing soap). Dry the wood immediately with a clean cloth.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve your vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Notice: **Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on your vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that is should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on your vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on your vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-98*. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 12 inches (30 cm) to the surface of the vehicle.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-94*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get approved cleaning products from your dealer/retailer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-98*.

If your vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on your vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, you may use chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels and Trim

Your vehicle may have either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if you do not wash your vehicle after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash your vehicle's chrome with soap and water after exposure.**

Notice: **If you use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, you could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, you could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never drive a vehicle equipped with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on your vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on your vehicle.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer/retailer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's/retailer's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer/retailer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

Description	Usage
Polishing Cloth	Interior and exterior polishing cloth.
Tar and Road Oil Remover	Removes tar, road oil, and asphalt.
Chrome Cleaner and Polish	Use on chrome or stainless steel.
White Sidewall Tire Cleaner	Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls and raised white lettering.
Vinyl Cleaner	Cleans vinyl.
Glass Cleaner	Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints.
Chrome Wheel Cleaner	Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels.
Finish Enhancer	Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants. Spray on and wipe off.

Description	Usage
Swirl Remover Polish	Removes swirl marks, fine scratches, and other light surface contamination.
Cleaner Wax	Removes light scratches and protects finish.
Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss	Cleans, shines, and protects tires. No wiping necessary.
Wash Wax Concentrate	Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free.
Spot Lifter	Quickly removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl, and cloth upholstery.
Odor Eliminator	Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather and carpet.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Certification/Tire and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code helps you identify your vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts.

Service Parts Identification Label

This label is in the passenger side rear storage compartment or at the lower edge of the liftgate. It is very helpful if you ever need to order parts. The label has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer/retailer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage would not be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain your vehicle's battery, even if your vehicle is not operating.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70*.

Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by an internal circuit breaker. If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow, the wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers in the fuse block protect the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

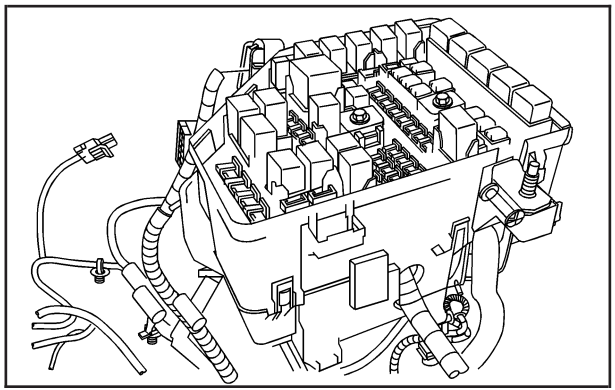
The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without — like the radio or cigarette lighter — and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

Underhood Fuse Block

The underhood fuse block is located in the engine compartment on the right side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

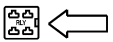


To access the fuses, push in the two tabs located on each side of the fuse block cover. Then lift the cover off.

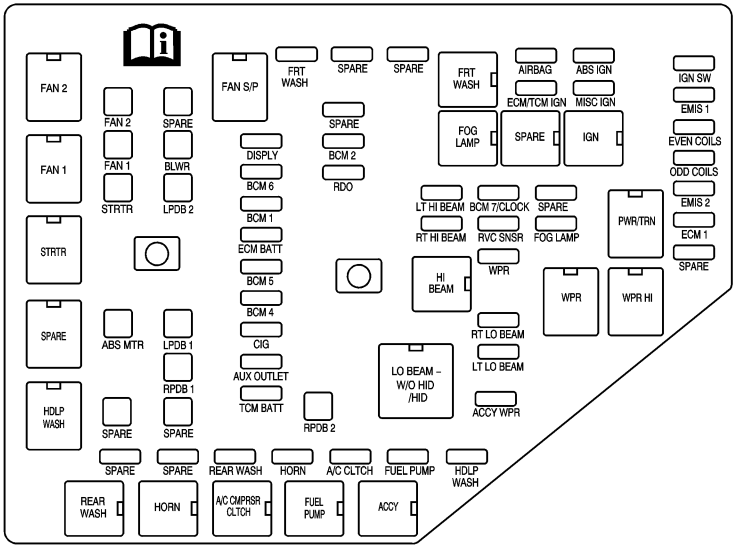
Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical components on your vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: –RELAYS TO BE INSERTED AS PER LABEL AND WITH THE CORRECT ORIENTATION AS INDICATED BY THE NOTCH. AN ORIENTATION DIFFERENCE OF 180° IS ACCEPTABLE FOR 4 TERMINAL RELAYS.



NOTE: –INSERER LES RELAIS D'APRES LES INDICATIONS SUR L'ETIQUETTE. L'INDENTATION CORRECTE. UNE DIFFERENCE D'ORIENTATION DE 180° EST ACCEPTABLE POUR LES RELAIS A 4 BORNES.



Relays	Usage
FAN 2	Right Side Engine Cooling Fan Motors
FAN S/P	Series/Parallel Engine Cooling Fan
FRT WASH	Front Washer Pump

Relays	Usage
FAN 1	Left Side Engine Cooling Fan Motors
FOG LAMP	Front Fog Lamps
SPARE	Spare

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Relays	Usage
IGN	Ignition Switch (ON)
STRTR	Starter Solenoid
PWR/TRN	Powertrain/Engine Control Module
HI BEAM	High-Beam Headlamps
SPARE	Spare
WPR	Windshield Wiper System - On/Off
WPR HI	Windshield Wiper System - Low/High
HDLP WASH	Headlamp Washer Pump (Option)
LO BEAM - W/O HID/HID	Low-Beam Headlamps
REAR WASH	Rear Washer Pump
HORN	Horn
A/C CMPRSR CLTCH	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch
FUEL PUMP	Fuel Pump
ACCY	Accessory Power (Rear Wipers, Inside Rearview Mirror)

J Case Fuses	Usage
FAN 2	Right Cooling Fan Motor
SPARE	Spare
FAN 1	Left Cooling Fan Motor

J Case Fuses	Usage
BLWR	Front Blower Motor Assembly
STRTR	Starter Solenoid
LPDB 2	LRPDB (Left Side Rear Power Distribution Box)
ABS MOTOR	Antilock Brake System Module
LPDB 1	LRPDB (Left Side Rear Power Distribution Box)
RPDB 1	RRPDB (Right Side Rear Power Distribution Box)
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare
RPDB 2	RRPDB (Right Side Rear Power Distribution Box)

Mini Fuses	Usage
FRT WASH	Front Washer Pump
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare
AIRBAG	Sensing Diagnostic Module (SDM), Occupant Sensor Display, Instrument Cluster
ABS IGN	Antilock Braking System Ignition, Variable Effort Steering
IGN SW	Ignition Switch, Immobilizer Module

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mini Fuses	Usage
ECM/TCM IGN	Engine Control Module/Transmission Control Module Ignition Power, Mass Airflow Sensor (V6)
MISC IGN	Air Quality Sensor
EMIS 1	Pre 02 Sensors, Cam Phasor (V6), Canister Purge (V6), Intake Manifold Tuning Valve (V6)
SPARE	Spare
DISPLY	Instrument Panel Cluster, Climate Control Module, Diagnostic Link Connector
BCM 2	LED Instrument Panel Dimming, Overhead Lamps, Vanity Lamps
EVEN COILS	Even Ignition Coils, Even Fuel Injectors
BCM 6	Right Side Rear Stoplamp, Turn Lamps, Key Capture Solenoid
RDO	Radio
ODD COILS	Odd Ignition Coils, Odd Fuel Injectors
BCM 1	Body Control Module (BCM) Power
LT HI BEAM	Left Side High-Beam Headlamp

Mini Fuses	Usage
BCM 7/CLOCK	Switch Dimming, Analog Clock
SPARE	Spare
EMIS 2	Cooling Fan Relays, Air Conditioning Clutch Relay, Post O2 Sensors, Mass Airflow Sensor (V8), Canister Purge (V8)
ECM BATT	Engine Control Module (ECM)
RT HI BEAM	Right Side High-Beam Headlamp
RVC SNSR	Battery Regulated Voltage Control Sense
FOG LAMP	Front Fog Lamps
ECM 1	Engine Control Module (ECM)
BCM 5	Left Side Front Turn Lamps, Rear Stoplamps, Turn Lamps
WPR	Windshield Wiper Motor
SPARE	Spare
BCM 4	Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL), Back-up Lamps
CIG	Instrument Panel Accessory Power Outlet (Cigarette Lighter)
RT LO BEAM	Right Side Low-Beam Headlamp

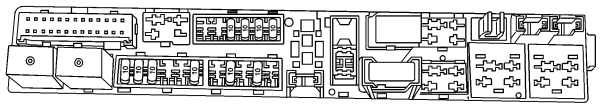
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mini Fuses	Usage
AUX OUTLET	Center Console Accessory Power Outlet
LT LO BEAM	Left Side Low-Beam Headlamp
TCM BATT	Transmission Control Module (TCM)
ACCY WPR	Rear Wiper Motor & Switch, Inside Rearview Mirror
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare
REAR WASH	Rear Washer Pump
HORN	Horn Assembly
A/C CLTCH	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch
FUEL PUMP	Fuel Pump

Circuit Breaker	Usage
HDLP WASH	Headlamp Washer Pump

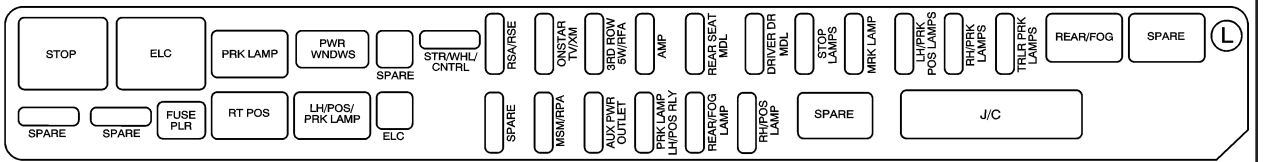
Rear Underseat Fuse Block (Left Side)

The left side rear fuse block is located under the rear seat on the left side of the vehicle. The carpet must be lifted up to access the rear fuse block.



To access the fuse block, push in the two tabs located at each end of the fuse block cover. Then lift the cover off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Relays	Usage
STOP	Not Used
ELC	Electronic Level Control (ELC) Compressor Motor
PRK LAMP	Not Used
REAR/FOG	Not Used

Relays	Usage
SPARE	Spare
RT POS	Not Used
LH/POS/ PRK LAMP	Front & Rear Park Lamps
SPARE	Spare

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mini Fuses	Usage
STR/WHL/ CNTRL	Steering Wheel Controls
RSA/RSE	Rear Seat Entertainment, Rear Seat Audio
ONSTAR TV/XM	OnStar® Module, XM™ Radio
3RD ROW SW/RFA	Flip Fold Seat Switches, Remote Keyless Entry System Module
AMP	Audio Amplifier
REAR SEAT MDL	Rear Seat Module, Flip/Fold Motors
DRIVER DR MDL	Driver Door Module (Locks, Outside Rearview Mirror, Window Switches)
STOP LAMPS	Not Used
MRK LAMP	License Lamps
LH/PRK POS LAMPS	Left Side Taillamp, Left Side Front Park Lamps, Sidemarker Lamps

Mini Fuses	Usage
RH/PRK LAMPS	Right Side Taillamp, Right Side Front Park Lamps, Sidemarker Lamps
TRLR PRK LAMPS	Trailer Park Lamps
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare
MSM/RPA	Memory Seat Module, Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) Module
AUX PWR OUTLET	Rear Auxiliary Power Outlet
PRK LAMP LH/POS RLY	Parking Lamp Relay
REAR/ FOG LAMP	Not Used
RH/POS LAMP	Not Used

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

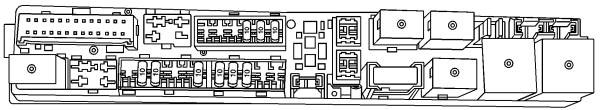
J Case Fuses	Usage
SPARE	Spare
ELC	Electronic Level Control (ELC) Compressor

Circuit Breakers	Usage
PWR WNDWS	Power Window Motors

Misc.	Usage
FUSE PLR	Fuse Puller
J/C	Joint Connector

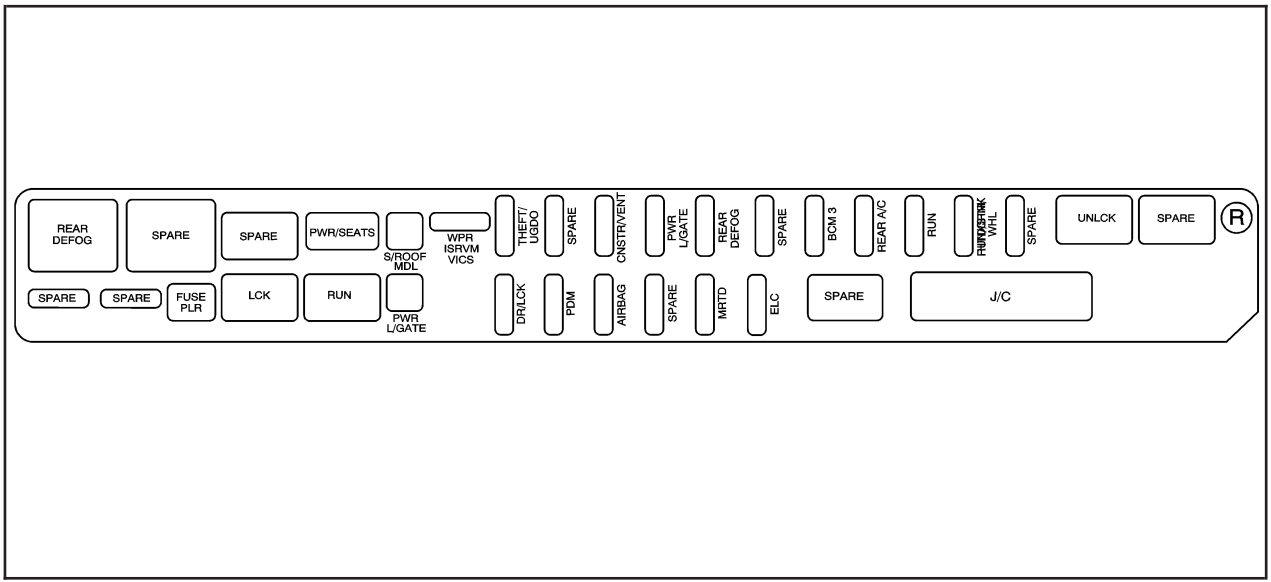
Rear Underseat Fuse Block (Right Side)

The right side rear fuse block is located under the rear seat on the right side of the vehicle. The carpet must be lifted up to access the rear fuse block.



To access the fuse block, push in the two tabs located at each end of the fuse block cover. Then lift the cover off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Relays	Usage
REAR DEFOG	Rear Window Defogger
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare

Relays	Usage
UNLCK	Rear Door Locks
SPARE	Spare
LCK	Rear Door Locks

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Relays	Usage
RUN RLY	Rear Air Conditioning Blower Motor, Climate Control Ignition, Heated Steering Wheel
SPARE	Spare

Mini Fuses	Usage
WPR ISRVM VICS	Rear Wiper Switch, Inside Rearview Mirror
THEFT UGDO	Garage Door Opener
SPARE	Spare
CNSTR/VENT	Canister Vent Solenoid
PWER L/GATE	Power Liftgate Module
REAR DEFOG	Rear Window Defogger
SPARE	Spare
BCM 3	Hush Panel Lamps, Overhead Courtesy Lamp Assembly, Right Side Front Turn Lamp
REAR A/C	Rear Air Conditioning System
RUN	Climate Control Module
HDD/STR/WHL	Heated Steering Wheel
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare
SPARE	Spare

Mini Fuses	Usage
DR/LCK	Rear Door Locks
PDM	Passenger Door Module (Locks, Outside Mirror, Window Switches)
AIRBAG	Sensing Diagnostic Module (SDM), Occupant Sensor, Roll-over Sensor
SPARE	Spare
MRTD	Suspension Module
ELC	Electronic Leveling Compressor (ELC) Exhaust Solenoid, ELC Relay

J Case Fuses	Usage
S/ROOF/MDL	Power Sunroof Module
PWR LIFT GATE	Power Liftgate Motors

Circuit Breakers	Usage
PWR/SEATS	Power Seat Motors

Misc.	Usage
FUSE PLR	Fuse Puller
J/C	Joint Connector

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your dealer/retailer for more information.	
Automatic Transmission (Pan Removal and Replacement)		
5-Speed Automatic	7.4 qt	7.0 L
6-Speed Automatic	6.7 qt	6.3 L
Cooling System		
3.6L V6	11.7 qt	11.1 L
4.6L V8	12.5 qt	11.8 L
Engine Oil with Filter		
3.6L V6	6.0 qt	5.7 L
4.6L V8	8.0 qt	7.6 L
Fuel Tank	20.0 gal	75.7 L
Wheel Nut Torque	100 lb ft	140 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
3.6L V6	7	Automatic	0.044 inches (1.10 mm)
4.6L V8	A	Automatic	0.050 inches (1.27 mm)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Introduction 6-2
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Using the Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Additional Required Services 6-6
Maintenance Footnotes 6-7
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
At Each Fuel Fill 6-9
At Least Once a Month 6-9
At Least Once a Year 6-10
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-14
Engine Drive Belt Routing 6-15
Maintenance Record 6-16

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Schedule

Introduction

Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.

Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements your new vehicle warranties. See your Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer/retailer for details.

Maintenance Requirements

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by warranty.**

Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain your vehicle properly.

Using the Maintenance Schedule

We want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You might drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you might drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You might use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you might drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You might need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your dealer/retailer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-33*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 4-12*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 6-7* for further information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your dealer/retailer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 5-4*.

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should have your dealer/retailer do these jobs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When you go to your dealer/retailer for your service needs, you will know that trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine parts.

If you want to purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9 tells you what should be checked, when to check it, and what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* and *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-14*. When your vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer/retailer.

Scheduled Maintenance

To maintain the ride, handling, and performance of your vehicle, it is important that the first tire rotation service be performed when the vehicle has 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). Check tires for inflation pressures and wear. See *Tires on page 5-51*. If tire rotation is recommended for your vehicle, rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* and “Tire Wear Inspection” in *At Least Once a Month on page 6-9*.

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, you must service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-19* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message appears, the following services, checks, and inspections are required:

- ❑ Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 5-16*. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-19*. *An Emission Control Service.*
- ❑ Lubricate chassis components. *See footnote #.*
- ❑ Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (g).*
- ❑ Inspect engine air cleaner filter. If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*. *See footnote (k).*
- ❑ Check tires for inflation pressures and wear. See *Tires on page 5-51*. If tire rotation is recommended for your vehicle, rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* and “Tire Wear Inspection” in *At Least Once a Month on page 6-9*.
- ❑ Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).*
- ❑ Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.
- ❑ Perform any needed additional services. See “Additional Required Services” in this section.
- ❑ Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).*
- ❑ Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).*
- ❑ Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).*
- ❑ Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).*
- ❑ Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*.		•		•		•
Replace passenger compartment air filter. *See footnote (j).*	•	•	•	•	•	•
For vehicles used for trailer towing: Change transfer case fluid.		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service). *See footnote (h).*		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (normal service).				•		
Replace spark plugs. *An Emission Control Service.*				•		

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).*						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (l).*						•
If using DOT-4 brake fluid, change brake fluid at a regular maintenance service every two years. *See footnote (m).*						

Maintenance Footnotes

 # Lubricate the front suspension, steering linkage, and parking brake cable guides. Control arm ball joints require lubrication but should not be lubricated unless their temperature is 10°F (-12°C) or higher, or they could be damaged.

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts, signs of wear or lack of lubrication. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings and clamps; replace with genuine parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) *Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged. See Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-49 and Windshield and Wiper Blades on page 5-95 for more information.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also see Checking the Restraint Systems on page 1-72*.

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood latch assemblies, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, hood hinges, body door hinges, rear compartment hinges, sunroof tracks, and any folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication could be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. See Weatherstrips on page 5-94*.

(g) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(h) *Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer/retailer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 5-23 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, the filter could require replacement more often.*

(k) *If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

(l) *Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

(m) *If using DOT-4 brake fluid only: Drain, flush, and refill brake hydraulic system at a regular maintenance service every two years. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer/retailer perform this service. See Brakes on page 5-35*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability, and emission control performance of your vehicle. Your dealer/retailer can assist you with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

At Each Fuel Fill

It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.

Engine Oil Level Check

Notice: **It is important to check the engine oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep the engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to the engine not covered by your warranty.**

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.

Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.

Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.

At Least Once a Month

Tire Inflation Check

Inspect your vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-59*. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation is recommended if your vehicle has the same size tires at all four wheel positions and may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

At Least Once a Year

Starter Switch Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-34*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in PARK (P).
- The ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission Park (P) Mechanism Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	The engine requires a special engine oil meeting GM Standard GM4718M. Oils meeting this standard can be identified as synthetic, and should also be identified with the American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. However, not all synthetic API oils with the starburst symbol will meet this GM standard. Look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM4718M. For the proper viscosity, see *Engine Oil on page 5-16*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.
Hydraulic Brake System	Delco® Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Front and Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 89021677, in Canada 89021678) meeting GM Specification 9986115.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Transfer Case	Manual Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 88861800, in Canada 88861801).
Hood Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Body Door Hinge Pins, Tailgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats, Sunroof Tracks, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Outer Tailgate Handle Pivot Points	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

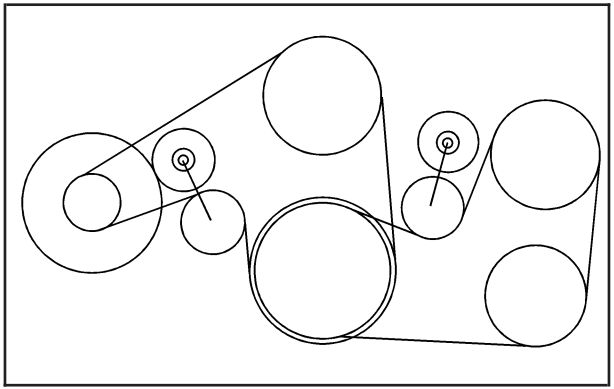
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

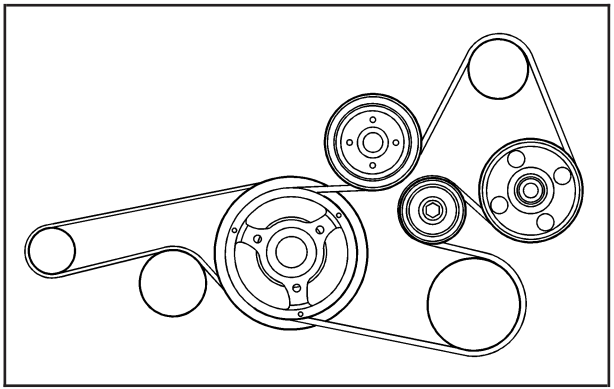
Part	GM Part Numbers	ACDelco® Part Numbers
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter		
3.6L and 4.6L engines	25735595 or 25798271	A2944C
Engine Oil Filter		
3.6L V6	25177917	PF2129
4.6L V8	89017342	PF61
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		
Particle and Odor Filter	88957450	CF130C
Particle Filter	25740404	CF133
Spark Plugs		
3.6L V6	12597464	41-990
4.6L V8	12571535	41-987
Windshield Wiper Blade Assembly		
Driver's Side – 22 inches (56.5 cm)	12367281	—
Passenger's Side – 21 inches (53.3 cm)	88892785	—
Rear Wiper Blade – 13 inches (33.0 cm)	12335716	—

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Drive Belt Routing



3.6L V6 Engine



4.6L V8 Engine

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 6-2*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
- Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2
- Online Owner Center 7-5
- Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
- Customer Assistance Offices 7-6
- GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-7
- Roadside Service 7-8
- Scheduling Service Appointments 7-10
- Courtesy Transportation 7-11
- Collision Damage Repair 7-12

Reporting Safety Defects 7-16
- Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 7-16
- Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 7-16
- Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 7-17
- Service Publications Ordering Information 7-17

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-18
- Event Data Recorders 7-19
- OnStar® 7-20
- Navigation System 7-20
- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 7-20

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of your vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the United States, contact the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center, 24 hours a day, by calling 1-800-458-8006. In Canada, contact the Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre by calling 1-888-446-2000.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Cadillac, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP THREE (United States Owners): Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you should file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP THREE (Canadian Owners):

General Motors Participation in the Mediation/Arbitration Program

In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after the following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two. General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge mediation/Arbitration program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685. Alternatively you may call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or you may write to the Mediation/Arbitration Program at the following address. Your inquiry should be accompanied by your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1–163–005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Center (United States only)

The Owner Center is a resource for your GM ownership needs. Specific vehicle information can be found in one place.

The Online Owner Center allows you to:

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner manual.
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find GM dealers/retailers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to members.

Refer to www.MyGMLink.com on the web for updated information and to register your vehicle.

My GM Canada (Canada only)

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of gmcanada.com where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM Dealers or Retailers.
- My Driveway: Receive service reminders and helpful advice on owning and maintaining your vehicle.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile, subscribe to E-News and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up to My GM Canada, visit the My GM Canada section within www.gmcanada.com.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-CMCC (2622). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to:

United States — Customer Assistance

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

www.Cadillac.com
1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

Canada — Customer Assistance

General Motors of Canada Limited
Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

www.gmcanada.com
1-888-446-2000
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Overseas — Customer Assistance

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) — Customer Assistance

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 of the cost of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for your vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift.

The offer is available for a very limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details.
TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Roadside Service

In the United States or Canada, call **1-800-882-1112**.

Text Telephone (TTY), U.S. only, call 1-888-889-2438.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

As the owner of a new Cadillac vehicle, you are automatically enrolled in the Cadillac Roadside Service® program.

Who Is Covered?

Roadside Service coverage is for the vehicle operator, regardless of ownership. In Canada, a person driving this vehicle without the consent of the owner is not eligible for coverage.

Cadillac Owner Privileges™

The following services are provided in the U.S. and Canada up to 5 years/100,000 miles (160 000 km), whichever occurs first, and, in Canada only, up to a maximum coverage of $100. These services are provided at a nominal charge if the vehicle is no longer within the Powertrain warranty.

Roadside Service provides several Cadillac Owner Privileges™ at "no charge," throughout your *Cadillac Powertrain Warranty — 5 years/100,000 miles (160 000 km).*

Emergency Road Service is performed on site for the following situations:

- **Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station (approximately $5 in Canada). In Canada, for safety reasons, propane and other alternative fuels will not be provided through this service.
- **Lock-out Service:** Lock-out service will be covered at no charge if you are unable to gain entry into your vehicle. A remote unlock may be available if you have an active OnStar® subscription. To ensure security, the driver must present personal identification before lock-out service is provided. In Canada, the vehicle registration is also required.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Roadway or Highway:** Tow to the nearest dealership for warranty service or in the event of a vehicle-disabling crash. Winch-out assistance is provided when the vehicle is mired in sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Installation of a spare tire in good condition, when equipped and properly inflated, is covered at no charge. The customer is responsible for the repair or replacement of the tire if not covered by a warrantable failure.
- **Jump Start:** A battery jump start is covered at no charge if the vehicle does not start.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Trip Routing Service:** Upon request, Cadillac Roadside Service will send you detailed, computer personalized maps, highlighting your choice of either the most direct route or the most scenic route to your destination, anywhere in North America, along with helpful travel information pertaining to your trip.

  Please allow three weeks before your planned departure date. In Canada, trip routing requests will be limited to six per calendar year.

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 60 months/ 100,000 miles (160 000 km) warranty period. Items covered are hotel, meals, and rental car.

- **Alternative Service (Canada only):** There may be times when Roadside Service cannot provide timely assistance. Your advisor may authorize you to secure local emergency road service, and you will be reimbursed up to $100 upon submission of the original receipt to Cadillac Roadside Service®.

Cadillac and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or reimbursement to an owner or driver when, in their sole discretion, the claims become excessive in frequency or type of occurrence.

Cadillac Technician Roadside Service (U.S. only)

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner in the United States with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

A dealer technician will travel to your location within a 30 mile radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership. Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Calling for Assistance

For prompt and efficient assistance when calling, please provide the following to the Roadside Service Representative:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Towing and Road Service Exclusions

Specifically excluded from Roadside Service coverage are towing or services for vehicles operated on a non-public roadway or highway, fines, impound towing caused by a violation of local, Municipal, State, Provincial or Federal law, and mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.

Roadside Service is not part of or included in the coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Cadillac and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Service program at any time without notification.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer/retailer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer/retailer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership/retailer, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer/retailer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Courtesy Transportation

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper to Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada) and extended powertrain warranty in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Participating dealers can provide shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service to a destination up to 10 miles (16 km) from the dealership.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the dealer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for a warranty repair. If you obtain a rental vehicle on your own, please see your dealer for the maximum number of days allowed and the allowance per rental day. Rental reimbursement must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc.

You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs will diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to assure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your GM dealer/retailer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

Here is what to do if you are involved in a crash.

- Try to relax and then check to make sure you are all right. If you are uninjured, make sure that no one else in your vehicle, or the other vehicle, is injured.
- If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move your vehicle only if its position puts you in danger or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.
- Give only the necessary and requested information to police and other parties involved in the crash. Do not discuss your personal condition, mental frame of mind, or anything unrelated to the crash. This will help guard against post-crash legal action.
- If you need roadside assistance, call GM Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Service on page 7-8* for more information.
- If your vehicle cannot be driven, know where the towing service will be taking it. Get a card from the tow truck operator or write down the driver's name, the service's name, and the phone number.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Remove any valuables from your vehicle before it is towed away. Make sure this includes your insurance information and registration if you keep these items in your vehicle.
- Gather the important information you will need from the other driver. Things like name, address, phone number, driver's license number, vehicle license plate, vehicle make, model and model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), insurance company and policy number, and a general description of the damage to the other vehicle.
- If possible, call your insurance company from the scene of the crash. They will walk you through the information they will need. If they ask for a police report, phone or go to the police department headquarters the next day and you can get a copy of the report for a nominal fee. In some states/provinces with "no fault" insurance laws, a report may not be necessary. This is especially true if there are no injuries and both vehicles are driveable.
- Choose a reputable collision repair facility for your vehicle. Whether you select a GM dealer/retailer or a private collision repair facility to fix the damage, make sure you are comfortable with them. Remember, you will have to feel comfortable with their work for a long time.
- Once you have an estimate, read it carefully and make sure you understand what work will be performed on your vehicle. If you have a question, ask for an explanation. Reputable shops welcome this opportunity.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) immediately, in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation. If it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer/retailer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
400 Seventh Street, SW.
Washington D.C., 20590

You can obtain information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, please notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, call 1-888-446-2000, or write:

Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
General Motors of Canada Limited
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins' give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 (U.S.) plus processing fee

Without Portfolio: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00 (U.S.) plus processing fee

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Current and Past Model Order Forms

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, specify year and model name of the vehicle.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123 Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on the World Wide Web at: www.helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your GM vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, your vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer/retailer technician service your vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

OnStar®

If your vehicle has OnStar® and you subscribe to the OnStar® services, please refer to the OnStar® Terms and Conditions for information on data collection and use. See also *OnStar® System on page 2-47* in this manual for more information.

Navigation System

If your vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation system operating manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A

Accessories and Modifications 5-3
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
Additives, Fuel 5-7
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-100
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 2-28
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 5-21
Air Conditioning 3-23
Airbag
  Passenger Status Indicator 3-35
  Readiness Light 3-34
Airbag System 1-55
  What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-64
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-61
  Where Are the Airbags? 1-58
Airbag Systems
  Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-63
  Passenger Sensing System 1-65
  Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-63
All-Wheel Drive 5-44
All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) System 4-8
Analog Clock 3-22
Antenna, Rear Side Window 3-94
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-94
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-4
Antilock Brake, System Warning Light 3-39
Appearance Care
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 5-96
  Care of Safety Belts 5-94
  Chemical Paint Spotting 5-97
  Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-94
  Fabric/Carpet 5-92
  Finish Care 5-95
  Finish Damage 5-97
  Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-93
  Interior Cleaning 5-91
  Leather 5-93
  Sheet Metal Damage 5-97
  Speaker Covers 5-93
  Tires 5-96
  Underbody Maintenance 5-97
  Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials 5-98
  Washing Your Vehicle 5-94
  Weatherstrips 5-94
  Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-95
  Wood Panels 5-93
Appointments, Scheduling Service 7-10
Ashtray 3-21

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio System 3-70
Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-92
Navigation/Radio System, see Navigation Manual 3-90
Radio Reception 3-93
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-90
Setting the Time 3-71
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-92
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-94
Audio System(s) 3-75
Rear Side Window Antenna 3-94
Automatic Transmission
Fluid 5-23
Operation 2-30

B

Battery 5-39
Electric Power Management 3-20
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 3-19
Brake
Emergencies 4-5
Brakes 5-35
Panic Assist 4-8
System Warning Light 3-38
Braking 4-3
Braking in Emergencies 4-5
Break-In, New Vehicle 2-24
Bulb Replacement 5-47
Halogen Bulbs 5-48
Headlamp Aiming 5-47
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 5-48
Buying New Tires 5-68

C

Calibration 2-41
California Fuel 5-6
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 5-4
California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4
Canadian Owners ii
Capacities and Specifications 5-111
Carbon Monoxide 2-13, 2-39, 4-29, 4-41
Care of
Safety Belts 5-94
Cargo Cover 2-59
Cargo Management System 2-59
CD, MP3 3-84
Center Console Storage Area 2-57
Chains, Tire 5-74
Charging System Light 3-37

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Check
Engine Light 3-42
Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-97
Child Restraints
Child Restraint Systems 1-39
Infants and Young Children 1-35
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-43
Older Children 1-32
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-49
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-52
Where to Put the Restraint 1-41
Cigarette Lighter 3-21
Cleaning
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 5-96
Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-94
Fabric/Carpet 5-92
Finish Care 5-95
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-93
Interior 5-91
Leather 5-93
Speaker Covers 5-93
Tires 5-96
Underbody Maintenance 5-97
Washing Your Vehicle 5-94
Cleaning (cont.)
Weatherstrips 5-94
Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-95
Wood Panels 5-93
Climate Control System
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 3-30
Dual 3-23
Outlet Adjustment 3-29
Rear Air Conditioning System 3-29
Clock 3-22, 3-71
Collision Damage Repair 7-12
Compact Spare Tire 5-90
Compass 2-41
Control of a Vehicle 4-3
Coolant
Engine Temperature Gage 3-40
Engine Temperature Warning Light 3-40
Heater, Engine 2-28
Surge Tank Pressure Cap 5-26
Cooling System 5-29
Cruise Control 3-12
Cruise Control Light 3-46
Cupholder(s) 2-57
Customer Assistance Information
Courtesy Transportation 7-11
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
Customer Assistance Offices 7-6

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance Information (cont.)
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-7
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 7-17
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 7-16
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 7-16
Roadside Service 7-8
Service Publications Ordering Information 7-17

D

Daytime Running Lamps 3-17
Defensive Driving 4-2
Delayed Locking 2-11
Disc, MP3 3-84
Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
Door
Central Door Unlocking System 2-10
Delayed Locking 2-11
Locks 2-10
Power Door Locks 2-10
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-47
DIC Operation and Displays 3-48
DIC Vehicle Customization 3-62
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
Driving
At Night 4-25
Before a Long Trip 4-27
Defensive 4-2
Drunken 4-2
Highway Hypnosis 4-27
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-28
In Rain and on Wet Roads 4-26
Off-Road 4-12
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-33
Winter 4-29
Dual Climate Control System 3-23
DVD
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-90

E

EDR 7-18
Electrical System
Add-On Equipment 5-100
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-101
Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-100

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electrical System (cont.)
Rear Underseat Fuse Block 5-105, 5-108
Underhood Fuse Block 5-101
Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-100
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 5-21
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 3-42
Coolant 5-23
Coolant Heater 2-28
Coolant Temperature Gage 3-40
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 3-40
Drive Belt Routing 6-15
Engine Compartment Overview 5-12
Exhaust 2-39
Oil 5-16
Oil Life System 5-19
Overheated Protection Operating Mode 5-28
Overheating 5-26
Running While Parked 2-40
Speed Limiter 3-33
Starting 2-26
Entry Lighting 3-19
Event Data Recorders 7-19
Extender, Safety Belt 1-32
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 3-19

F

Filter
Engine Air Cleaner 5-21
Finish Damage 5-97
Flashers, Hazard Warning 3-6
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Flat Tire 5-75
Flat Tire, Changing 5-76
Flat Tire, Storing 5-87
Fluid 5-23
Power Steering 5-33
Windshield Washer 5-34
Fog Lamp
Fog 3-18
Fog Lamp Light 3-45
Front Axle 5-46
Fuel 5-5
Additives 5-7
California Fuel 5-6
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-10
Filling the Tank 5-8
Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-7
Gage 3-47
Gasoline Octane 5-5
Gasoline Specifications 5-6

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-101
Rear Underseat Fuse Block 5-105, 5-108
Underhood Fuse Block 5-101
Windshield Wiper 5-100

G

Gage
Engine Coolant Temperature 3-40
Fuel 3-47
Speedometer 3-33
Tachometer 3-33
Garage Door Opener 2-50
Gasoline
Octane 5-5
Specifications 5-6
Glove Box 2-57
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-7

H

Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Head Restraints 1-9
Headlamp
Aiming 5-47
Headlamps 3-16
Bulb Replacement 5-47
Daytime Running Lamps 3-17
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Halogen Bulbs 5-48
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 5-48
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
On Reminder 3-16
Washer 3-12
Wiper Activated 3-16
Heated Seats 1-4
Heated Steering Wheel 3-7
Heater 3-23
Highbeam On Light 3-46
High-Speed Operation, Tires 5-60
Highway Hypnosis 4-27
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-28
Hood
Checking Things Under 5-10
Release 5-11
Horn 3-6
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-18

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

I

Ignition Positions 2-25
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 1-35
Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-59
Instrument Panel
  Overview 3-4
Instrument Panel (I/P)
  Brightness 3-19
  Cluster 3-32

J

Jump Starting 5-40

K

Keyless Entry System 2-4
Keys 2-3

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 5-53
Lamps
  Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 3-19
  Reading 3-20
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-26
LATCH System
  Child Restraints 1-43
Level Control 4-40
Liftgate, Power 2-13
Light
  Airbag Readiness 3-34
  Antilock Brake System Warning 3-39
  Brake System Warning 3-38
  Charging System 3-37
  Cruise Control 3-46
  Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 3-40
  Fog Lamp 3-45
  Highbeam On 3-46
  Lights On Reminder 3-46
  Malfunction Indicator 3-42
  Oil Pressure 3-44
  Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-35
  Safety Belt Reminders 3-33
  Security 3-45
  TCS Warning Light 3-39
  Tire Pressure 3-41
  Tow/Haul Mode 3-46
  Traction Control System (TCS) Warning 3-39
Lighting
  Entry 3-19
  Parade Dimming 3-19

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lights 3-16
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
On Reminder 3-16
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 4-7
Loading Your Vehicle 4-33
Lockout Protection 2-12
Locks
Central Door Unlocking System 2-10
Delayed Locking 2-11
Door 2-10
Lockout Protection 2-12
Power Door 2-10
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Loss of Control 4-10
Luggage Carrier 2-58
Lumbar
Power Controls 1-4

M

Magnetic Ride Control 4-6
Maintenance Schedule
Additional Required Services 6-6
At Each Fuel Fill 6-9
At Least Once a Month 6-9
At Least Once a Year 6-10
Maintenance Schedule (cont.)
Introduction 6-2
Maintenance Footnotes 6-7
Maintenance Record 6-16
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-14
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Using 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Malfunction Indicator Light 3-42
Manual Seats 1-2
Manual, Using iii
Memory Seat and Mirrors 1-5
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar® 2-41
Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar® and Compass 2-41
Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror 2-44
Outside Convex Mirror 2-44
Outside Power Heated Mirrors 2-43
Park Tilt 2-44
MP3 3-84
MyGMLink.com 7-5

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

N

Navigation System, Privacy 7-20
Navigation/Radio System,
see Navigation Manual 3-90
New Vehicle Break-In 2-24
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-14

O

Odometer 3-33
Off-Road Driving 4-12
Off-Road Recovery 4-10
Oil
Engine 5-16
Pressure Light 3-44
Oil, Engine Oil Life System 5-19
Older Children, Restraints 1-32
Online Owner Center 7-5
OnStar, Privacy 7-20
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual 2-47
Operation, Universal Home Remote System 2-50
Other Warning Devices 3-6
Outlet Adjustment 3-29
Outlets
Accessory Power 3-21
Outside
Automatic Dimming Mirror 2-44
Convex Mirror 2-44
Power Heated Mirrors 2-43
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 5-28
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
Owners, Canadian ii

P

Paint, Damage 5-97
Panic Brake Assist 4-8
Parade Dimming 3-19
Park Aid 2-45
Park Brake 2-34
Park (P)
Shifting Into 2-36
Shifting Out of 2-38
Park Tilt Mirrors 2-44
Parking
Assist 2-45
Over Things That Burn 2-38
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-35
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 3-30
Passenger Sensing System 1-65
Passing 4-10

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

PASS-Key® III+ 2-22
PASS-Key® III+ Operation 2-22
Perchlorate Materials Requirements,
California 5-4
Power
Door Locks 2-10
Electrical System 5-100
Liftgate 2-13
Lumbar Controls 1-4
Retained Accessory (RAP) 2-26
Seat 1-3
Steering Fluid 5-33
Windows 2-17
Privacy 7-18
Event Data Recorders 7-19
Navigation System 7-20
OnStar 7-20
Radio Frequency Identification 7-20
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-11

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID),
Privacy 7-20
Radios 3-70
Radio(s) 3-75
Radios
Navigation/Radio System,
see Navigation Manual 3-90
Rear Seat Audio 3-90
Reception 3-93
Setting the Time 3-71
Theft-Deterrent 3-92
Reading Lamps 3-20
Rear Air Conditioning System 3-29
Rear Axle 5-46
Limited-Slip 4-7
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-90
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-90
Rear Seat Operation 1-11
Rear Side Window Antenna 3-94
Rear Windshield Washer/Wiper 3-11
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with
OnStar® 2-41
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with
OnStar® and Compass 2-41
Reclining Seatbacks 1-6
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-39
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System, Operation ... 2-5
Remote Vehicle Start 2-7

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing
the Spare Tire 5-80
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-77
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 7-16
General Motors 7-17
United States Government 7-16
Restraint System Check
Checking the Restraint Systems 1-72
Replacing Restraint System Parts
After a Crash 1-73
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-26
Roadside
Service 7-8
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-33
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 6-15
Running the Engine While Parked 2-40

S

Safety Belt
Reminder Light 3-33
Safety Belts
Care of 5-94
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-18
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-26
Safety Belt Extender 1-32
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-31
Safety Belts Are for Everyone 1-13
Safety Warnings and Symbols iii
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Seats
Head Restraints 1-9
Heated Seats 1-4
Memory, Mirrors 1-5
Power Lumbar 1-4
Power Seats 1-3
Rear Seat Operation 1-11
Reclining Seatbacks 1-6
Stowable Seat 1-12
Secondary Latch System 5-84
Securing a Child Restraint
Rear Seat Position 1-49
Right Front Seat Position 1-52
Security Light 3-45
Service 5-3
Accessories and Modifications 5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside
of Your Vehicle 5-5
California Pershlorate Materials Requirements ... 5-4
California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4
Doing Your Own Work 5-4
Engine Soon Light 3-42
Publications Ordering Information 7-17
Service, Scheduling Appointments 7-10
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-70
Sheet Metal Damage 5-97
Shifting Into Park (P) 2-36

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Out of Park (P) 2-38
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 3-8
Spare Tire
  Compact 5-90
  Installing 5-80
  Removing 5-77
  Storing 5-87
Specifications, Capacities 5-111
Speedometer 3-33
StabiliTrak® System 4-7
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-7
Starting the Engine 2-26
Steering 4-8
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio 3-92
Steering Wheel, Heated 3-7
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel 3-6
Storage Areas
  Cargo Management System 2-59
  Center Console Storage Area 2-57
  Cupholder(s) 2-57
  Glove Box 2-57
  Luggage Carrier 2-58
Stowable Seat 1-12
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 4-32
Sun Visors 2-20
Sunroof 2-59, 2-61

T

Tachometer 3-33
TCS Warning Light 3-39
Theft-Deterrent, Radio 3-92
Theft-Deterrent System 2-20
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-20
  PASS-Key® III+ 2-22
  PASS-Key® III+ Operation 2-22
Tilt Wheel 3-6
Time, Setting 3-71
Tire
  Pressure Light 3-41
Tires 5-51
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels, Cleaning 5-96
  Buying New Tires 5-68
  Chains 5-74
  Changing a Flat Tire 5-76
  Cleaning 5-96
  Compact Spare Tire 5-90
  Different Size 5-70
  High-Speed Operation 5-60
  If a Tire Goes Flat 5-75
  Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-59
  Inspection and Rotation 5-66

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires (cont.)
Installing the Spare Tire 5-80
Pressure Monitor Operation 5-62
Pressure Monitor System 5-61
Removing the Flat Tire 5-80
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-77
Secondary Latch System 5-84
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-87
Tire Sidewall Labeling 5-53
Tire Terminology and Definitions 5-56
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-70
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-72
Wheel Replacement 5-72
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-67
Winter Tires 5-52
Tow/Haul Mode 2-33
Tow/Haul Mode Light 3-46
Towing
Recreational Vehicle 4-39
Towing a Trailer 4-41
Your Vehicle 4-39
Traction
Control System (TCS) 4-5
Control System Warning Light 3-39
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 4-7
Magnetic Ride Control 4-6
StabiliTrak® System 4-7
Transmission
Fluid, Automatic 5-23
Transmission Operation, Automatic 2-30
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-8
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7

U

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) 2-45
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-70
Universal Home Remote System 2-50
Operation 2-50
Using this Manual iii

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

V

Vehicle
- Control 4-3
- Damage Warnings iv
- Loading 4-33
- Symbols iv

Vehicle Customization, DIC 3-62
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-18
Vehicle Identification
- Number (VIN) 5-99
- Service Parts Identification Label 5-99

Vehicle, Remote Start 2-7
Ventilation Adjustment 3-29
Visors 2-20

W

Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators 3-31
Warnings
- DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
- Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
- Other Warning Devices 3-6
- Safety and Symbols iii
- Vehicle Damage iv

Washer, Headlamps 3-12
Wheels
- Alignment and Tire Balance 5-72
- Different Size 5-70
- Replacement 5-72

Where to Put the Restraint 1-41
Windows 2-16
- Power 2-17

Windshield
- Washer 3-10
- Washer Fluid 5-34
- Wiper Blade Replacement 5-49
- Wiper Blades, Cleaning 5-95
- Wiper Fuses 5-100
- Wipers 3-9

Windshield, Rear Washer/Wiper 3-11
Winter Driving 4-29
Winter Tires 5-52
Wiper Activated Headlamps 3-16

X

XM Radio Messages 3-89
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-94

Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS